


ESSENTIALS OF LATIN

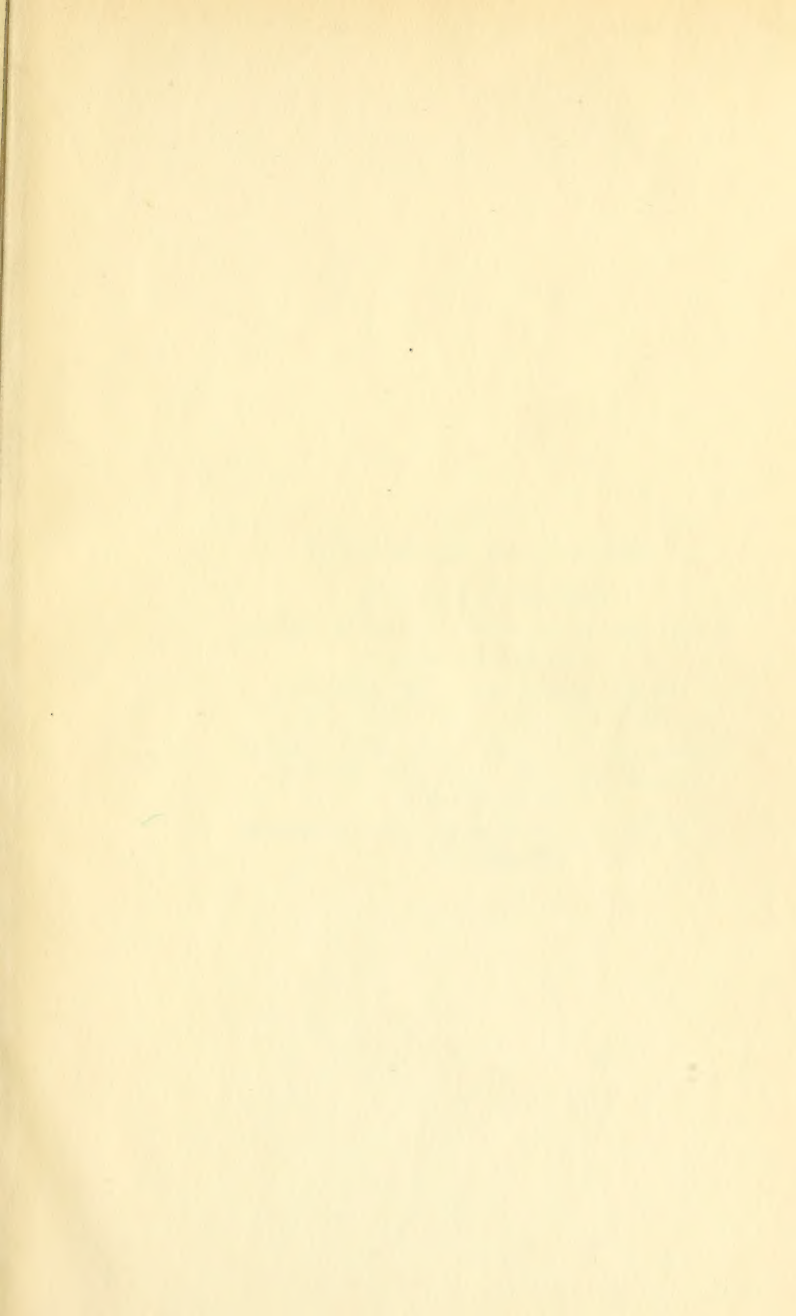
HENRY CARR PEARSON



3 1761 06236510 1



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation



EX LIBRIS
JOHANNIS FLETCHER

PER DUO ET VIGINTI
ANNOS LINGUAE LATINAE IN COLLEGIO
UNIVERSITATIS

PROFESSORIS: QUI MENSE JULIO
A.D. MDCCCXVII MORTUUS EST:

LIBROS QUOS ILLE PENITUS AMAVERAT
UXOR ET FILII EJUS COLLEGIO AMATO
DONAVERUNT.

DULCES EXUVIAE DUM FATA DEUS-QUE SINEBANT.

—*Virg: Æn: IV.*

Morris and Morgan's Latin Series

EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

- Essentials of Latin for Beginners.** Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York. 90 cents.
- A School Latin Grammar.** Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University. \$1.00.
- A First Latin Writer.** M. A. Abbott, Groton School. 60 cents.
- Connected Passages for Latin Prose Writing.** Maurice W. Mather, Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College. \$1.00.
- Caesar. Episodes from the Gallic and Civil Wars.** Maurice W. Mather, Harvard University. \$1.25.
- Cicero. Select Orations with Extracts from the Epistles to serve as Illustrations.** J. Remsen Bishop, Walnut Hills High School, Cincinnati, and Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati.
- Selections from Latin Prose Authors for Sight Reading.** Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr. 60 cents.
- Cicero. Cato Maior.** Frank G. Moore, Dartmouth College. 80 cents.
- Cicero. Laelius de Amicitia.** Clifton Price, University of California. 75 cents.
- Selections from Livy.** Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College. \$1.25.
- Horace. Odes and Epodes.** Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University. \$1.50.
- Terence. Phormio and Adelphoe.** Edward P. Morris, Yale University.
- Pliny's Letters.** Albert A. Howard, Harvard University.
- Tibullus.** Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.
- Lucretius.** William A. Merrill, University of California.
- Latin Literature of the Empire.** Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania.
- | | |
|--|--------|
| Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius | \$1.80 |
| Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus | 1.80 |
- Selections from the Public and Private Law of the Romans.** James J. Robinson, Yale University. \$1.25.

Others to be announced later.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON, A.B., HARVARD

HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE, NEW YORK

DEPARTMENTAL
LIBRARY



182359
10.7.23.

NEW YORK.: CINCINNATI.: CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY



COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY

EDWARD P. MORRIS AND MORRIS H. MORGAN.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

PEARSON. ESSENTIALS OF LATIN.

W. P. I

PREFACE

THIS book is designed to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's *Gallie War*. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that some teachers may not wish to present to their pupils during the first year's work. They are independent of one another and of the rest of the book, and may, therefore, be taken up in any order that the teacher wishes, or any number of them may be omitted.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers of first year Latin :

1. Carefully selected vocabularies, containing with a very few exceptions only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's *Gallie War*. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons.

2. The constant comparison of English and Latin usage. Not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.

3. A more logical and consecutive treatment of topics. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs are not treated in

a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to a topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony.

4. A brief preparatory course. Allowing ample time for reviews, the first seventy lessons should be thoroughly mastered in about twenty-five weeks.

5. The Review Exercises under each lesson. These employ the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and afford additional practice for those who wish it. They may be omitted, however, if desired, as the regular Exercises also review preceding constructions.

6. Carefully graded material for reading. There are selections from *Viri Romæ* and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's *Gallie War*, Book II, in simplified form. This should prepare a pupil to begin to read the regular text of Caesar at the beginning of the second year.

I wish to express my grateful acknowledgments to the following well-known teachers of Latin who have read the manuscript of this book, and have rendered valuable assistance by their suggestions and criticisms: Mr. H. F. Towle, Boys' High School, Brooklyn; Mr. A. L. Hodges, Wadleigh High School, New York City; Mr. A. J. Inglis, Horace Mann High School, New York City; Mr. Herbert T. Rich, Boston Latin School. This book has had the benefit of the criticism of Professor M. H. Morgan of Harvard University, one of the editors of the series, who has carefully read both the manuscript and the proof.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

NEW YORK CITY,
January, 1905.

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	11
1. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> . Feminine Nouns	16
2. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Feminine Adjectives	18
3. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Limiting Genitive. Present Indicative of <i>Sum</i>	20
4. First Conjugation. Present Indicative. Direct Object	22
5. Second Declension or Stems in <i>-o-</i> . Masculine Nouns in <i>-us</i> . Mas- culine of Adjectives	25
6. Second Declension (continued). Neuters in <i>-um</i> . Appositive. In- direct Object	28
7. Declension of Adjectives in <i>-us, -a, -um</i> . Agreement	30
8. Second Declension (continued). Masculines in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i>	33
9. Second Declension (continued). Masculines in <i>-ius</i> and <i>-ium</i> . Ad- jectives in <i>-er, -(e)ra, -(e)rum</i>	36
10. Imperfect and Future Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . Order of Words. Review	40
11. First Conjugation. Principal Parts. Formation and Conjugation of the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active	42
12. First Conjugation (continued). Perfect Indicative Active. Ablative of Means	45
13. First Conjugation (continued). Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active. Review	48
14. Second Conjugation. Characteristics. Formation and Conjugation of the Indicative Active	51
15. Third Declension. Consonant Stems	54
16. Third Declension (continued). Consonant Stems. Ablative of Cause	57
17. Third Declension (continued). Stems in <i>-i-</i>	60
18. Review of Third Declension. Rules of Gender. Ablative of Time When	63
19. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter I, Book I, Gallic War. Hints for Translation	65
20. Present Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Agent	68

LESSON	PAGE
21. Imperfect and Future Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Manner	72
22. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	75
23. Adjectives of the Third Declension. Three Terminations. Abla- tive of Specification	78
24. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued). Two and One Terminations. Dative with Adjectives	81
25. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter II	84
26. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of <i>Sum</i> . Review of the First and Second Conjugations	85
27. Third Conjugation. Present, Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive	87
28. Third Conjugation (completed). Verbs in <i>iō</i>	89
29. Present Infinitive, Active and Passive. The Infinitive used as in English	92
30. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter III	94
31. <i>Is, Idem</i>	95
32. The Relative Pronoun	98
33. <i>Hic and Ille</i> . Adjectives used as Substantives	101
34. <i>Ipse, Iste</i> . Irregular Adjectives. Ablative of Separation	104
35. Fourth Conjugation. The Interrogative <i>Quis</i>	107
36. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IV	110
37. Fourth Declension	111
38. Irregular Verb <i>Eō</i> . Place Where, Whence, Whither	114
39. Review of the Four Conjugations. Dative of Possessor	117
40. Numerals. Accusative of Extent of Time and Space	120
41. Fifth Declension. Partitive Genitive	122
42. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter V	125
43. Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative of Comparison	125
44. Comparison of Adjectives (continued). Ablative of the Measure of Difference	128
45. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. <i>Possum</i>	131
46. Review of Comparison of Adjectives. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	134
47. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VI	137
48. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	137
49. Possessive Adjectives. Dative of Service	141
50. Indefinite Pronouns. Descriptive Ablative and Genitive	144
51. Participles. Forms, Declension, and Meanings	147
52. Participles (continued). Ablative Absolute	151

CONTENTS

9

LESSON	PAGE
53. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VII	154
54. Infinitives. Formation and Meanings	155
55. Indirect Discourse. Simple Statements	157
56. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with <i>Utor, Fruor</i> , etc.	161
57. <i>Ferō</i> and <i>Fiō</i> . Dative with Intransitives	163
58. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VIII	165
59. The Subjunctive Mood. Present Tense. Clauses of Purpose	166
60. The Subjunctive (continued). Imperfect Tense. Result Clauses	169
61. <i>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō</i> . Relative Clause of Purpose	172
62. Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses	174
63. Substantive Clauses	178
64. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IX	181
65. Object Clauses with Verbs of Fearing. <i>Cum</i> Temporal, Causal, and Concessive	182
66. Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . Dative with Compound Verbs	185
67. The Imperative. Commands and Exhortations	187
68. Gerund and Gerundive	190
69. Complete Review of Verb Forms	193
70. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter X	194

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

71. Conditional Sentences. Present and Past Time	196
72. Conditional Sentences (continued). Future Time	198
73. Wishes	200
74. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences	202
75. Impersonal Use of Verbs. Supine. Different Ways of expressing Purpose	204
76. Periphrastic Conjugations	206

SELECTIONS FOR READING:

Selections from Roman History	209
Caesar. Gallic War, Book II, Chapters I-20	218
APPENDIX. Tables of Inflections, Conjugation, etc.	231
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	267
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	299
INDEX	315



(10)

ITALY AND GAUL

SCALE OF MILES

0 100 200 300 400 500

INTRODUCTION

1. These introductory sections should be read by the pupils and used for reference. Pupils learn pronunciation quickly by imitation. It is suggested that the teacher pronounce slowly the words in sections 9 and 21, and that the pupils repeat. Reference may be made to the rules as mistakes are made.

ALPHABET

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant.

3. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*. The other letters are consonants.

4. Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels that are pronounced as one. They are

ae oe au eu ui

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION

5. The long vowels are pronounced as follows :

<i>ā</i> like <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> .	<i>ī</i> like <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
<i>ē</i> like <i>e</i> in <i>prey</i> .	<i>ō</i> like <i>o</i> in <i>note</i> .
<i>ū</i> like <i>oo</i> in <i>root</i> .	

6. The short vowels are pronounced as follows :

<i>a</i> like the first <i>a</i> in <i>ahá</i> .	<i>i</i> like <i>i</i> in <i>pit</i> .
<i>e</i> like <i>e</i> in <i>step</i> .	<i>o</i> like <i>o</i> in <i>or</i> .
<i>u</i> like <i>u</i> in <i>pull</i> .	

7. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. But note the following points:

c and g are hard, as in <i>come</i> and <i>go</i> .	s is a hissing sound, as in <i>sin</i> ; never like <i>z</i> , as in <i>ease</i> .
i consonant is like <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> .	ch is like <i>ch</i> in <i>chorus</i> .
t is hard, as in <i>tin</i> .	ph is like <i>ph</i> in <i>alphabet</i> .
v is like <i>w</i> in <i>wine</i> .	qu is almost like <i>kw</i> .

8. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

ae like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> .	au like <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i> .
oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>toil</i> .	eu (rare) like <i>éh-oo</i> .
ui is almost like <i>wé</i> .	ei (rare) like <i>ci</i> in <i>eight</i> .

9.

EXERCISE

<i>hī</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>genus</i>	<i>vir</i>
<i>ad</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>coepit</i>	<i>mēnsae</i>
<i>ita</i>	<i>tot</i>	<i>quia</i>	<i>rēgnō</i>	<i>cui</i>
<i>iam</i>	<i>sic</i>	<i>causa</i>	<i>-que</i>	<i>aeger</i>

SYLLABLES

10. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong either alone or with one or more consonants. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: **ae-dí-fi-cō**, *I build*.

11. A single consonant between two vowels belongs with the following vowel: **a-mí-cus**, *friend*.

12. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced with it: **hó-spes**, *guest*; **cō-gnó-scō**, *I recognize*.

13. Compound words are divided into their component parts: **ad-est** (*ad*, *near*; *est*, *he is*), *he is present*.

14. Doubled consonants are separated : *pu-él-la*, *girl*.

15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY

16. Vowels are long (—) or short (˘). The long vowels are marked in this book; unmarked vowels (except in diphthongs) must be considered short.

17. The following are a few general rules for determining the quantity of vowels :

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or *h* : *có-pi-a*, *abundance*.
2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long : *có-gō* (*cōăgō*), *I collect*.
3. Vowels are long before *nf*, *ns*, *nct*, *ncs* : *īnferō*, *I bring in*; *īnsānus*, *mad*.
4. Diphthongs are long : *cāusa*, *cause*.

18. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long by nature : *lēgēs*, *laws*; *aedēs*, *temple*.

19. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by *x* or *z*, is long by position. The short vowel, however, is still pronounced short : *vocant*, *they call*; *dux*, *leader*.

ACCENT

20. The following principles determine what syllable of a word receives the stress of the voice :

1. The ultima, or last syllable, is never accented.
2. Words of two syllables accent the first, or penult : *téplum*, *temple*.

3. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when it is long, otherwise the antepenult: **amáre**, *to love*; **míttere**, *to send*.
4. Certain words like **-ne**, the sign of a question, and **-que**, *and*, called enclitics, are so closely joined to the preceding word that its last syllable has an accent: **amátne**, *does he love?* **hominésque**, *and the men*.

EXERCISE

21. Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following words:

iniquus	vincam	aedificium	gladiō
grātiaē	filius	coepērunt	cuius
huic	īdem	filiusque	quae
monēre	vērō	mēnsārum	faciēbam
facere	aegritūdō	pugnābō	laudābimus

INFLECTION

22. **Parts of Speech.**—These are the same in Latin as in English, except that there is no article in Latin: namely, noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, and the particles.

23. **Inflection.**—This is the change that words undergo to show their grammatical relations to the rest of the sentence. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called *declension*; of verbs, *conjugation*.

24. **Declension.**—Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases:

1. *Nominative*, which is the case of the subject.
2. *Genitive*. It may generally be rendered by the English possessive, or by the objective with *of*.

3. *Dative*. Corresponds to the English objective with the prepositions *to* or *for*.
4. *Accusative*, the case of the direct object.
5. *Vocative*, the case of direct address.
6. *Ablative*. This expresses various relations corresponding to the English objective with the prepositions *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *at*, and *on*.

25. Conjugation. — Verbs in Latin have

1. Three finite moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Supines, Gerunds, and Gerundives.
2. Six tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.
3. Two voices, as in English, Active and Passive.
4. Three persons, as in English, First, Second, Third.
5. Two numbers, as in English, Singular and Plural.

GENDER

26. There are three genders, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

The gender is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning of the noun, but more often by the ending.

27. General Rules of Gender.

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine: *nauta*, sailor; *Tiberis*, the Tiber; *Caesar*, Caesar; *aquilō*, north wind; *Iānuārius*, January.
2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, and trees are feminine: *filia*, daughter; *Ītalia*, Italy; *Athēnae*, Athens; *pirus*, pear tree.
3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter: *nihil*, nothing.

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS¹ IN -ā-

FEMININE NOUNS

28. Nouns in Latin are divided into five declensions, or classes, which are distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular. Nouns of the First Declension are *feminine*, unless they denote males, and are declined like the following example:

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS ²
NOM.	stella, <i>a star</i> (as subject)	-a
GEN.	stellae, <i>of a star, or star's</i>	-ae
DAT.	stellae, <i>to or for a star</i>	-ae
ACC.	stellam, <i>star, or a star</i> (as object)	-am
ABL.	stellā, <i>from, with, by a star</i>	-ā
PLURAL		
NOM.	stellae, <i>stars</i> (as subject)	-ae
GEN.	stellārum, <i>of stars, or stars'</i>	-ārum
DAT.	stellis, <i>to or for stars</i>	-is
ACC.	stellās, <i>stars</i> (as object)	-ās
ABL.	stellis, <i>from, with, by stars</i>	-is

Note carefully

1. That the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike.
2. That the dative and ablative plural are alike.

¹ The stem is that part of a word to which the case endings are attached in inflection.

² The terminations are a combination of the case endings with the final vowel of the stem.

3. That the **-a** of the ablative singular is long.
4. That the base, or that part of the noun which remains unchanged in inflection, is obtained by dropping the termination **-ae** of the genitive singular; *i.e.* **stellae**, base, **stell-**.

29. 1. The vocative case is like the nominative, except in certain nouns of the second declension: **stella**, (*O*) *star*.

2. There is no article in Latin. Consequently **stella** may mean *star*, *the star*, or *a star*.

VOCABULARY

30. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words, and decline each noun like **stella**:

NOUNS

puella , ae, f., <i>girl</i> .	rōsa , ae, f., <i>rose</i> .
rēgīna , ae, f., <i>queen</i> .	via , ae, f., <i>road, way, street</i> .
stella , ae, f., <i>star</i> .	silva , ae, f., <i>forest</i> .
filia , ¹ ae, f., <i>daughter</i> .	lūna , ae, f., <i>moon</i> .
porta , ae, f., <i>gate</i> .	

31.

EXERCISES

(Pronounce, give case and number, and translate)

I. 1. Puellārum. 2. Portīs. 3. Lūnā. 4. Rōsis.
5. Silvam. 6. Filiābus. 7. Rēgīnae. 8. Viis. 9. Portae.
10. Stellās. 11. Viārum. 12. Filia rēgīnae. 13. Filiās
rēgīnārum.

II. 1. To the queen. 2. By a rose. 3. The forests.
4. The rose of the queen. 5. From the streets. 6. Of
the stars. 7. For the girls. 8. By the gates. 9. Of the
daughters.

¹ **Fīlia**, *daughter*, and **dea**, *goddess*, have the ending **-ābus**, not **-īs**, in the dative and ablative plural.

LESSON 2

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEM IN -ā- (CONTINUED)

FEMININE ADJECTIVES

32. Feminine adjectives of the First Declension are declined like the nouns.

rōsa pulchra, *pretty rose*

Stem **rōsā- pulchrā-**

Base **rōs- pulchr-**

SINGULAR

NOM.	rōsa pulchra , <i>a pretty rose</i>
GEN.	rōsae pulchrae , <i>of a pretty rose</i>
DAT.	rōsae pulchrae , <i>to or for a pretty rose</i>
ACC.	rōsam pulchram , <i>a pretty rose</i>
ABL.	rōsā pulchrā , <i>from, with, by a pretty rose</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	rōsae pulchrae , <i>pretty roses</i>
GEN.	rōsārum pulchrārum , <i>of pretty roses</i>
DAT.	rōsis pulchris , <i>to or for pretty roses</i>
ACC.	rōsās pulchrās , <i>pretty roses</i>
ABL.	rōsis pulchris , <i>from, with, by pretty roses</i>

Observe that the adjective and noun are in the same case. Notice the position of the Latin adjective with reference to its noun. It does not always precede the noun, as in English. See the remarks on the order of words (82).

Decline together : **via lāta**, *the wide road* ; **puella parva**, *the little girl*.

33. Examine the following :

1. **Rōsa est pulchra**, *the rose is pretty*.
2. **Rōsae sunt pulchrae**, *the roses are pretty*.

Note in these sentences

- a. That the subjects **rōsa** and **rōsae** are in the nominative case.
- b. That the verb is singular, when the subject is singular ; and plural, when the subject is plural.
- c. That the predicate adjectives **pulchra** and **pulchrae** agree with the subject in case.

34. Rules of Syntax.

1. *The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case.*
2. *A predicate adjective or noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*

35.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

fābula, ae, f., *story*.
sagitta, ae, f., *arrow*.
insula, ae, f., *island*.
terra, ae, f., *land, country*.

VERBS

est, (*he, she, it*) *is*.
sunt, (*they*) *are*.

ADJECTIVES

bona, *good*.
lāta, *broad, wide*.
longa, *long*.
magna, *large, great*.
pulchra, *beautiful, pretty*.

ADVERBS

ubi, *where, when*.
nōn, *not*.

CONJUNCTION

et, *and*.

36.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fābulae sunt longae. 2. Terra est lāta et pulchra.
 3. Ubi est pulchra īnsula? 4. Lūna est pulchra. 5. Bonae sagittae sunt longae. 6. Nōn est pulchra. 7. Magnae sunt īnsulae. 8. Lātis terrīs. 9. Lūna et stellae sunt pulchrae. 10. Via est lāta. 11. Ubi sunt īnsulae magnae? 12. Sagittārum longārum.

II. 1. The good queen is beautiful. 2. It¹ is a large island. 3. Where are the long arrows? 4. They are beautiful girls. 5. The land is not wide. 6. A long story is not good.

LESSON 3

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED). GENITIVE CASE. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **sum**

37. Examine the following :

1. Rōsa puellae est alba, *the rose of the girl is white, or the girl's rose is white.*
2. Rōsae puellārum sunt albae, *the roses of the girls are white, or the girls' roses are white.*

Observe that **puellae** limits **rōsa** : not every rose is white, but only the girl's rose is white. In the same way **puellārum** limits **rōsae**, because it defines whose roses are meant.

38. Rule. — *The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun.*

39. PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD, OF THE VERB **sum**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	sum , <i>I am</i>	sumus , <i>we are</i>
2D PER.	es , <i>you are (thou art)</i>	estis , <i>you are</i>
3D PER.	est , <i>(he, she, it) is</i>	sunt , <i>they are</i>

¹ It is, est,

40. Examine the following :

STATEMENT

Fēmina est pulchra, *the woman is beautiful.*

QUESTIONS

Estne fēmina pulchra? *is the woman beautiful?*

Ubi est sagitta? *where is the arrow?*

Observe

1. That **-ne** is the sign of a question and is attached to the first word.
2. That **-ne** is not used if the question already begins with a question word.

41.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
vīta, ae, f., *life.*
cōpia, ae, f., *abundance* (pl., *troops, forces*).
fēmina, ae, f., *woman.*
patria, ae, f., *native land, country.*
Graecia, ae, f., *Greece.*
Eurōpa, ae, f., *Europe.*
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*

ADJECTIVES

nova, *new.*
parva, *small.*
mea, *my, mine.*
tua, *your, yours.*

ADVERB

semper, *always, ever.*

-ne, enclitic, sign of a question, but not separately translated.

42.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Gallia est terra Eurōpae. 2. Estne Gallia tua patria? 3. Nōn sunt parvae fēminae. 4. Estne cōpia pecūniae? 5. Nōn longa est vīta fēminae. 6. Est pulchra. 7. Cōpiac rēgīnac nōn sunt magnae. 8. Suntne parvae puellae? 9. Rēgīna tuae patriae est pulchra. 10. Cōpiac patriae meae nōn semper sunt parvae.

11. Rēgīnārum rōsae sunt pulchrae. 12. Suntne novae lūnae semper pulchrae? 13. Ubi sunt rēgīnārum cōpiae? 14. Fēminae Graeciae sunt pulchrae.

II. 1. We are; you (sing.) are; you (plur.) are. 2. Where are we? 3. Of the beautiful women. 4. My country's forces are small. 5. There is not always an abundance of money. 6. Are queens' daughters always beautiful? 7. It is a pretty country. 8. By my daughters.



Ancient Roman Coins

LESSON 4

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE, DIRECT OBJECT

43. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *amō*

SINGULAR		PERSONAL ENDINGS ¹
1ST PER.	<i>amō, I love, am loving, do love</i>	<i>-ō (or -m), I</i>
2D PER.	<i>amās, you love, are loving, do love</i>	<i>-s, you (or thou)</i>
3D PER.	<i>amāt, he loves, is loving, does love</i>	<i>-t, he, she, it</i>
PLURAL		PERSONAL ENDINGS
1ST PER.	<i>amāmus, we love, are loving, do love</i>	<i>-mus, we</i>
2D PER.	<i>amātis, you love, are loving, do love</i>	<i>-tis, you</i>
3D PER.	<i>amant, they love, are loving, do love</i>	<i>-nt, they</i>

¹ These are the personal endings of all tenses, except the perfect indicative.

Observe

1. That the personal endings are added to the stem **amā-**, the final vowel of which is lost before **ō** in the first person singular.
2. That the person and number of a Latin verb are indicated by the *ending*, and not by the use of a pronoun, as in English.

44. Like **amō**, conjugate the present indicative of

pugnō, *I fight*

culpō, *I blame*

vocō, *I call*

laudō, *I praise*

45. Carefully examine the following :

1. **Rēgīna nautam laudat**, *the queen praises the sailor.*
2. **Rēgīnae nautam laudant**, *the queens praise the sailor.*
3. **Nautam laudant**, *they praise the sailor.*
4. **Nautam laudāmus**, *we praise the sailor.*

From these sentences you will see

1. That the direct object of the verb, *i.e.* that which the action of the verb affects, is in the accusative case.
2. That when a noun is the subject, the verb is third person.
3. That when a noun is not the subject, the subject is not expressed by a separate word. Why must the pronouns be expressed in English?
4. That the verb is in the same *number* and *person* as the subject.

46. Rules of Syntax.

1. *A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*
2. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

47.

VOCABULARY

agricola, ae, m.,¹ *farmer*.nauta, ae, m.,¹ *sailor*.Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy*.Rōma, ae, f., *Rome*.inopia, ae, f., *lack, want*.fida, *faithful*.superba, *proud, haughty*.amō, *I love, I like*.pugnō, *I fight*.vocō, *I call*.culpō, *I blame*.laudō, *I praise*.cūr, adv., *why?*in, prep. with abl., *in, on*.*Ancient Roman Plow*

48.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Graeciae insulae sunt parvae. 2. Pecūniā meā.
 3. Suntne cōpiae patriae tuae magnae? 4. Fēminae filiae
 nōn semper sunt bonae. 5. Est cōpia pecūniae. 6. Pul-
 chrae sunt Eurōpae viae. 7. Estne fābula nova?

II. 1. Where are you (plur.)? 2. Are the queen's
 daughters beautiful? 3. She is small. 4. (O) queen,
 where is your daughter? 5. We are; you are (sing.).

49.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnātis; pugnat; pugnāmus. 2. Vocās; vo-
 cantne? vocātisne? 3. Cūr agricolās culpāmus? 4. In
 Ītaliā inopia est pecūniae. 5. Laudantne nautās?
 6. Superbās fēminās nōn amāmus. 7. Rēgīnae nautās
 nōn laudāmus. 8. Superbae in Galliā sunt puellae.

¹ A masculine noun of the first declension. Why? See 27, 1.

9. Ubi sunt agricolārum filiāe? 10. Cūr nautam culpā?
 11. Rōsae magnae et pulchrae sunt in meā patriā.
 12. Agricolae inopiam pecūniae nōn amant.

II. 1. We blame; she praises; you (plur.) are calling.
 2. They are fighting; you (sing.) call; we fight. 3. There¹
 are pretty roses in Italy. 4. Why do you blame the sailor?
 5. The woman is calling the sailor's daughters. 6. Italy is
 a country of Europe.

LESSON 5

SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-. MASCULINE
 NOUNS IN -us. MASCULINE ADJECTIVES

50.

hortus, m., *garden*

Stem **horto-**

Base **hort-**

SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
NOM. hortus	-us
GEN. horti	-ī
DAT. hortō	-ō
ACC. hortum	-um
ABL. hortō	-ō
PLURAL	
NOM. horti	-ī
GEN. hortōrum	-ōrum
DAT. hortīs	-īs
ACC. hortōs	-ōs
ABL. hortīs	-īs

¹ *There are, sunt*; also *it is, est*. There are no special words in Latin for *there* and *it* used in this way.

51. The masculine of adjectives ending in **-us** is declined like the nouns of this declension ending in **-us**.

hortus parvus, the small garden

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	hortus parvus	horti parvi
GEN.	horti parvi	hortorum parvorum
DAT.	horto parvō	hortis parvis
ACC.	hortum parvum	hortos parvos
ABL.	horto parvō	hortis parvis

52. 1. What case terminations of this declension are alike? Which are the same as the first declension terminations?

2. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension has a special form in **-e**: **domine**, (*O*) *master*. See 29, 1.

3. The base to which the terminations are added is obtained by dropping the **-i** of the genitive singular: **horti**, base **hort-**.

4. Conjugate the present indicative of the verbs given in the vocabulary below.

53.

VOCABULARY

amicus, i, m., <i>friend</i> .	bonus, <i>good</i> .
cibus, i, m., <i>food</i> .	malus, <i>bad, evil</i> .
dominus, i, m., <i>master, lord</i> .	parvus, <i>small</i> .
equus, i, m., <i>horse</i> .	superbus, <i>proud, haughty</i> .
hortus, i, m., <i>garden</i> .	fidus, <i>faithful</i> .
servus, i, m., <i>slave, servant</i> .	dēlectō, <i>I delight, I please</i> .
sed, conj., <i>but</i> .	servō, <i>I keep, I preserve, I save</i> .
magnus, <i>great, large</i> .	

54.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēgīnae nautās laudās. 2. Amātisne Rōmam?
3. Ubi nautae pugnant? 4. Nautae in viā pugnant.
5. Fīliam rēgīnae nōn amant. 6. Agricolās nōn semper
laudant.

II. 1. Is there a lack of money in your native country?
2. The queen's daughter blames the woman. 3. Where is
the sailor's money?

55.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominō; amīcōrum; equī. 2. Amīcīs; dominī
superbī; equīs magnīs. 3. Servus est amīcus agricolae.
4. Equī sunt bonī sed nōn magnī. 5. Rēgīna fidum servum
laudat. 6. Superbum dominum nōn amant. 7. Rēgīnae
filia malum servum culpat. 8. Cibus dominō servant.
9. Amīce, culpāsne dominum servōrum? 10. Agricolae
parvōs equōs nōn laudant. 11. Cibus est in hortō. 12. Cūr
fidī equī dominōs dēlectant?

II. 1. To the masters; of the horse; for the slaves.
2. The food of the slaves is not good. 3. The master is
in the garden. 4. He blames his¹ faithful horse. 5. The
garden is large, but not beautiful. 6. Good food pleases
the slaves. 7. Slave, where is the sailor's friend?

¹ Omit.



Coin of Caesar

LESSON 6

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NEUTERS IN **-um**.
 APPOSITIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT

56. **dōnum**, *gift*

Stem **dōno-**
 Base **dōn-**

SINGULAR

NOM.	dōnum
GEN.	dōnī
DAT.	dōnō
ACC.	dōnum
ABL.	dōnō

PLURAL

NOM.	dōna
GEN.	dōnōrum
DAT.	dōnīs
ACC.	dōna
ABL.	dōnīs

donum grātum, *acceptable gift*

Stem **dōno-**, **grāto-**
 Base **dōn-**, **grāt-**

SINGULAR

NOM.	dōnum grātum
GEN.	dōnī grātī
DAT.	dōnō grātō
ACC.	dōnum grātum
ABL.	dōnō grātō

PLURAL

NOM.	dōna grāta
GEN.	dōnōrum grātōrum
DAT.	dōnīs grātīs
ACC.	dōna grāta
ABL.	dōnīs grātīs

Observe that the nominative and accusative of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative plural ends in **-a**. This is true of all neuter nouns of all declensions.

57. Examine the following :

1. **Mārcus agricola filiae equum dat**, *Marcus, the farmer, gives (his) daughter a horse, OR gives a horse to (his) daughter.*
2. **Mārcō amicō cibum dō**, *I give Marcus (my) friend food, OR I give food to Marcus, my friend.*

Observe in these sentences

1. That **agricola** denotes the same person as **Mārcus**, and that it tells something about him, and is in the same case. Such a word is called an appositive. **Amicō** has the same relation to **Mārcō**. Compare with 33, c, and note the difference.
2. That **equum** and **cibum**, being directly affected by the action of their respective verbs, are in the accusative, but that **filiae** and **Mārcō** are in the dative case, because they are *indirectly* affected by the verb.

58. Rules of Syntax.

1. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*
2. *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

59.

VOCABULARY

bellum, i, n., *war*.

dōnum, i, n., *gift*.

oppidum, i, n., *town*.

frumentum, i, n., *grain*.

vīnum, i, n., *wine*.

in, prep. with acc., *into*,
against; with abl., *in*, *on*,
over.

Mārcus, i, m., *Marcus*.

incola, ae, m. and f., *inhabitant*.

Rōmānus, i, m., *Roman*.

grātus, a, um, *acceptable*,
pleasing.

dō, *I give*.

portō, *I carry*.

60.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Malum servum culpāmus.* 2. *Laudantne domini superbī servōs fidōs?* 3. *Equi domini sunt in magnō hortō.* 4. *Ubi servī cibum dominōrum servant?* 5. *Agricolae fidōs equōs nōn semper laudant.* 6. *Est cibus in domini hortō.* 7. *Fēmina amīcī filiam vocat.*

II. 1. She praises my friend's garden. 2. A good horse pleases your daughter. 3. The master praises the friend, but blames the servants. 4. The sailors' friends are in Greece. 5. Why does the garden please the farmer?

61.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppidīs; bella; vīnō. 2. Mārcus nauta est fīdus. 3. Incolīs vīnum damus. 4. Bellum est Rōmānīs grātum. 5. Cibum in oppidum portāmus. 6. Mārcus agricolārum amīcus est Rōmānus. 7. Incolae in oppidum frūmentum portant. 8. Fīliae rēgīnae in hortō sunt. 9. Vīnum Mārcō nautae dant. 10. Dōna incolīs oppidī sunt grāta. 11. Cūr vīnum servīs datis? 12. Portantne nautae cibum et vīnum in Galliam?

II. 1. To Marcus, the farmer; for the good wine. 2. Are you giving the horses good grain? 3. Wars delight the proud Romans. 4. The farmer gives the horse food. 5. The queen gives wine to Marcus, the sailor. 6. They carry roses into the garden. 7. The gifts please the Roman's daughters.

LESSON 7

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. AGREEMENT

62. Adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like nouns of those declensions. As has been seen in 51 and 56, the endings of the masculine and neuter of adjectives are the same as the endings of the nouns of the second declension, and the feminine endings are the same as those of nouns of the first declension (32). The complete declension of **bonus**, *good*, is as follows:

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

1. What is the vocative singular of **bonus**? See 52, 2.
2. Decline together, adding the vocative case, **amicus fidus**, *faithful friend*; **puella parva**, *little girl*; **oppidum magnum**, *large town*.

63. Examine the following:

1. **Amicus est fidus**, *the friend is faithful*.
2. **Agricolae sunt validi**, *the farmers are sturdy*.
3. **Puellae sunt parvae**, *the girls are small*.
4. **Nautās superbōs nōn amāmus**, *we do not like proud sailors*.

Compare carefully the endings of the nouns and adjectives in these sentences, and notice

- a. That the adjectives are in the same *number*, *gender*, and *case* as the nouns they modify.
- b. That the endings of the nouns and adjectives are not always the same, for adjectives modifying masculine nouns of the first declension must have the masculine endings, which are second declension endings. Which of the above sentences illustrate this?

64. Decline together *nauta bonus, the good sailor; pōculum magnum, the large cup; agricola validus, the strong farmer.*

65. Rule of Syntax. — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

66.

VOCABULARY

<i>malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked.</i>	<i>lātus, a, um, wide, broad.</i>
<i>novus, a, um, new.</i>	<i>fidus, a, um, faithful, loyal.</i>
<i>magnus, a, um, great, large.</i>	<i>superbus, a, um, proud, haughty.</i>
<i>parvus, a, um, small.</i>	<i>validus, a, um, strong, sturdy.</i>
<i>tuus, a, um, your, yours.</i>	<i>convocō, I call together, I summon.</i>
<i>grātus, a, um, acceptable, pleasing.</i>	<i>hodiē, adv., to-day.</i>
<i>albus, a, um, white.</i>	<i>nunc, adv., now.</i>
<i>cārus, a, um, dear.</i>	
<i>perītus, a, um, skillful.</i>	
<i>longus, a, um, long.</i>	

67.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Filiae equīs cibum dant.* 2. *Inopia pecūniae Mārcō agricolae nōn est grāta.* 3. *Vocātisne incolās Galliae?* 4. *Ubi Rōmānī pugnant?* 5. *Nautae rēgīnae dōna grāta dant.* 6. *Nauta Mārcō agricolae bonum vīnum dat.*

II. 1. *The sailor gives acceptable gifts to his daughter.* 2. *The daughter of Marcus, the farmer, saves the town.* 3. *They give the women money.* 4. *He is carrying grain into the town.*

68.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Equī albī frūmentum in oppidum portant.* 2. *Ubi est hodiē nauta perītus?* 3. *In oppidō nunc est nauta.* 4. *Dōna meis amicīs sunt semper grāta.* 5. *Equum*

agricolae validō fēminae dant. 6. Rēgīna superba in magnum oppidum servōs convocat. 7. Dominus servōs fidōs vocat. 8. Mea filia nōn est in hortō. 9. Hodīe perītōs agricolās nōn culpāmus. 10. Dona rēgīnae incolās fidōs dēlectant. 11. Est nova lūna. 12. Cūr in hortum agricolās validōs convocās?

II. 1. A sailor is not always faithful. 2. They are now praising the skillful farmers. 3. The queen summons the wicked inhabitants into the towns. 4. We are praising your faithful friend to-day. 5. There are many inhabitants in the towns. 6. The queen is giving Marcus, the farmer, a slave.

LESSON 8

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

69.

Paradigms

 puer, *boy*

 ager, *field*

 vir, *man*

 Stem **puero-**

 Stem **agro-**

 Stem **viro-**

 Base **puer-**

 Base **agr-**

 Base **vir-**

SINGULAR

NOM. puer

ager

vir

GEN. puerī

agrī

virī

DAT. puerō

agrō

virō

ACC. puerum

agrum

virum

ABL. puerō

agrō

virō

PLURAL

NOM. puerī

agrī

virī

GEN. puerōrum

agrōrum

virōrum

DAT. puerīs

agrīs

virīs

ACC. puerōs

agrōs

virōs

ABL. puerīs

agrīs

virīs

1. Are the terminations the same as in 50?
2. Is the base obtained in the same way as in previous nouns?
3. The vocative is like the nominative. See 29, 1, and 52, 2.
4. Compare carefully **puer** and **ager**, and note that the base of **ager** has no **e** before **r**.

70. Like **puer**, decline

gener, **generī**, m., *son-in-law*

socer, **socerī**, m., *father-in-law*

liberī, **liberōrum**, m. (plur.), *children*

These and a few other nouns are the only ones that are declined like **puer**. Most nouns of this declension are declined like **ager**.

71.

VOCABULARY

liber, **librī**, m., *book*.

gener, **generī**, m., *son-in-law*.

socer, **socerī**, m., *father-in-law*.

liberī, **liberōrum**, m. (plur.), *children*.

magister, **magistrī**, m., *teacher, master*.

ager, **agrī**, m., *field*.

Gallus, **ī**, m., *a Gaul*.

vir, **virī**, m., *man*.

puer, **puerī**, m., *boy*.

discipulus, **ī**, m., *pupil*.

multus, **a**, **um**, m., *much*;

(plur.), *many*.

72.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Inopia frūmentī est in Galliā. 2. Incolīs oppidī magnī equōs dant. 3. Servus dōna agricolae in oppidum portat. 4. Estne nunc pecūniae cōpia? 5. Agricolārum vīta Gallōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Cūr in pulchram īnsulam frūmentum portāmus?

II. 1. The inhabitants like a good story. 2. There are many sturdy farmers in my country. 3. The Romans

are summoning many troops into the towns. 4. There are farmers in the forest, and many sailors on the island.

73.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Multi librī sunt in oppidō. 2. Virī puellās et puerōs laudant. 3. Cibum in oppidum portāmus. 4. Liber meō generō est grātus. 5. Rēgīna liberōs in oppidum convocat. 6. Discipulī magistrī amīcum laudant. 7. Agricolaē multī nunc sunt in agrō. 8. Meus socer liberōs magistrī laudat. 9. Incolārum agrī sunt lātī. 10. Magister discipulōs nōn semper culpat. 11. Ubi nunc sunt filiae meae librī? 12. Equī multōs virōs in silvam portant.



A Roman School

II. 1. The boys are my children's friends. 2. My daughter loves her father-in-law. 3. The sturdy farmers are calling the servants into the fields. 4. The teacher gives the man a book. 5. There are not many sailors in the town. 6. The teacher praises his faithful pupils.

LESSON 9

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). MASCULINES IN
-ius AND -ium. ADJECTIVES IN -er, (-e)ra, (-e)rum

74.

Paradigms

filius, *son*proelium, *battle*

Stem filio-

Stem proelio-

Base fili-

Base proeli-

SINGULAR

NOM. filius

proelium

GEN. fili (fili)

proeli (proeli)

DAT. filiō

proeliō

ACC. filium

proelium

ABL. filiō

proeliō

PLURAL

NOM. filii

proelia

GEN. filiōrum

proeliōrum

DAT. filiis

proeliis

ACC. filiōs

proelia

ABL. filiis

proeliis

1. The genitive singular of nouns in -ius and -ium generally ends in a single -i, and the accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: **cōnsilium**, *plan*; (gen.) **cōnsilī**.
2. In nouns in -ius, the vocative singular ends in -ī: **fili**, (*O*) *son*; **Mercurius**, (voc.) **Mercūrī**, (*O*) *Mercury*.
3. Do these nouns in other respects differ from those in Lesson 5?

75.

liber, *free*

Stem **libero-**

Base **liber-**

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	liber	libera	liberum
GEN.	liberī	liberae	liberī
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberō
		etc.	

niger, *black*

Stem **nigro-**

Base **nigr-**

SINGULAR

NOM.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
		etc.	

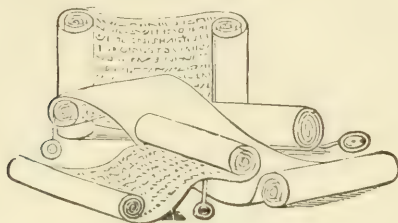
1. Complete the declension of these adjectives.
2. It has been noticed that adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um** are declined in the masculine like **hortus** (50). Likewise adjectives in **-er**, **-era**, **-erum** are declined in the masculine like **puer** (69), and those in **-er**, **-ra**, **-rum** like **ager** (69). The feminine and neuter of these adjectives follow **stella** (28) and **dōnum** (56).
3. Learn the adjectives in the vocabulary that have **e** before the final **r** of the base. Most other adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like **niger**, **nigra**, **nigrum**. See 70.

76. Distinguish carefully

liber, libera, liberum, free.

liberī, liberōrum, m. (plur.), children.

liber, librī, m., book.



Roman Books

77. SUMMARY OF NOUNS OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

FIRST DECLENSION

Nom. Sing. Terminations

-a

Gender

Feminine

(Except names of males, 26, 27)

SECOND DECLENSION

-us

-ius

-er

-ir

-um

-ium

Masculine

Neuter

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. How is the base of a noun obtained?
2. In what nouns is the vocative singular not like the nominative?
3. In what nouns is there an irregularity in the formation of the genitive singular? the dative and ablative plural?

4. Enumerate the nouns and adjectives in *-er* that have *e* before the *r* of the base.

78.

VOCABULARY

<i>filius, fili, m., son.</i>	<i>proelium, proeli, n., battle.</i>
<i>nūntius, i, m., messenger.</i>	<i>miser, misera, miserum,</i>
<i>gladius, i, m., sword.</i>	<i>wretched, poor.</i>
<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,</i>	<i>asper, aspera, asperum, rough,</i>
<i>beautiful, pretty.</i>	<i>fierce.</i>
<i>tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.</i>	<i>niger, nigra, nigrum, black.</i>
<i>aedificium, i, n., building.</i>	<i>piger, pigra, pigrum, slow,</i>
	<i>lazy.</i>

79.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. In agrō Mārci amīci multī sunt equī. 2. Liber, dōnum pulchrum magistri, puerum dēlectat. 3. Agricolaē multī equōs magnōs amant. 4. Lātaene sunt viae Italiae? 5. Puerōs fidōs vocātis. 6. Cūr nūntiī liberōs in oppidum convocant?

II. 1. They praise the sons of free men. 2. Many are the inhabitants in the towns of Greece. 3. The Romans are carrying much grain into the towns. 4. I am giving my friend Marcus a large book.

80.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aedificia in Graeciā sunt pulchra. 2. Filī, ubi sunt librī tuī? 3. Nūntiōrum sagittae nōn sunt longae. 4. Virī gladiōs multōs in aedificium portant. 5. Rōsae multae et tenerae sunt in asperā silvā. 6. Agricolaē miserī pigrōs equōs nōn amant. 7. Proelia nautās asperōs dēlectant. 8. Dōna meī generī filiis et filiābus sunt grāta. 9. Cūr dominus superbus servōs pigrōs culpāt?

10. Nūntī filiō librōs multōs dō. 11. Viae pulchrae Galliae liberōs dēlectant. 12. In magnō aedificiō sunt multae sagittae et multī gladii.

II. 1. The messenger's daughter is pretty. 2. The great buildings please the fierce inhabitants. 3. Messenger, are you carrying my sword? 4. Fierce battles are pleasing to the Romans. 5. You are giving my son a black horse. 6. There are many women and men in the beautiful building.



Gladius

LESSON 10

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF **sum**. REVIEW

81. Review 39. The imperfect and future tenses of **sum** are conjugated as follows:

IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
		SINGULAR	
1. eram, <i>I was</i>		1. erō, <i>I shall be</i>	
2. erās, <i>you were</i>		2. eris, <i>you will be</i>	
3. erat, <i>he was</i>		3. erit, <i>he will be</i>	
		PLURAL	
1. erāmus, <i>we were</i>		1. erimus, <i>we shall be</i>	
2. erātis, <i>you were</i>		2. eritis, <i>you will be</i>	
3. erant, <i>they were</i>		3. erunt, <i>they will be</i>	

1. Are the personal endings of these tenses regular?
See 43. Are these endings the same as those of the present of **sum**?

82. Order of Words. — In an English sentence the order of the words is very important, because of the comparatively few inflectional endings. A change in the order may change entirely the meaning of a sentence. For example :

Caesar praises the loyal farmers.

The loyal farmers praise Caesar.

In Latin, a change in the order of the words does not change the meaning of the sentence, but merely shows the *emphasis* which the writer wishes to give to a particular word or phrase. For example :

1. **Caesar agricolās fidōs laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
2. **Caesar fidōs agricolās laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
3. **Agricolās fidōs laudat Caesar**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*

The first sentence shows the normal order, and implies no special emphasis on any word, but this order is often changed to express the emphasis the writer wishes to show. In the second sentence **fidōs** is more emphatic than it was in the first. In the third **agricolās fidōs** is emphatic.

83.

REVIEW LIST OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

1. Review carefully the meaning, gender, and declension of each noun.
2. Recall any English equivalents that the Latin words suggest, viz., **vīta**, *vital*; **nauta**, *nautical*. Also watch for relationship between Latin words, viz., **ager**, *field*; **agricola**, *farmer*. Do this for new words of succeeding vocabularies.

incola	gladius	agricola	lūna	aedificium
discipulus	vir	patria	porta	frūmentum
vīnum	ager	cōpia	fābula	oppidum
sagitta	fēmina	vīta	īnsula	dōnum
proelium	gener	pecūnia	amicus	bellum
puer	hortus	terra	dominus	magister
via	silva	rēgīna	servus	liber
rōsa	inopia	stella	equus	socer
cibus	nauta	fīlia	filius	

84.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Erimus; erāmus; sumus. 2. Erātis; eritis; estis. 3. Erant; es; eris. 4. Erās; erunt; eris. 5. Fīlī agricolae erant parvī. 6. Fīlia nūntī erat in īnsulā pulchrā. 7. Rēgīnae cōpiae erunt in tuā patriā. 8. Nautae nōn erant pigrī. 9. Ubi gladius meī amīcī erat? 10. In magnō aedificiō erat.

II. 1. We were; we are; we shall be. 2. They will be; you (plur.) will be; she was. 3. You (sing.) were; he will be; you (sing.) will be. 4. My friend's horse was not lazy. 5. The sailor's sons were small. 6. The fierce inhabitants will be slaves of the queen.

LESSON II

FIRST CONJUGATION. PRINCIPAL PARTS. FORMATION
AND CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE

85. Review 25 and 43. Latin verbs are divided into four classes or conjugations. These conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before the *-re* of the present infinitive active. Thus:

CONJUGATION	PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
I.	amāre , <i>to love</i>	ā
II.	monēre , <i>to advise</i>	ē
III.	regere , <i>to rule</i>	e
IV.	audire , <i>to hear</i>	i

86. The principal parts of the verb are (1) the present indicative active, (2) the present infinitive active, (3) the perfect indicative active, (4) the perfect passive participle. These four forms of a verb must be known, because from them are obtained the stems necessary to the formation of all forms of the verb. These stems are called (1) present stem, (2) perfect stem, (3) participial stem, and are obtained from the principal parts as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
amō	amā re	amāv i	amāt us
	present stem	perfect stem	participial stem

87. Paradigm

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amābam**, *I was loving, I loved, I did love*
2. **amābās**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābat**, *he was loving, loved, did love*

PLURAL

1. **amābāmus**, *we were loving, loved, did love*
2. **amābātis**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābant**, *they were loving, loved, did love*

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amābō**, *I shall love*
2. **amābis**, *you will love*
3. **amābit**, *he will love*

PLURAL

1. **amābimus**, *we shall love*
2. **amābitis**, *you will love*
3. **amābunt**, *they will love*

Observe

1. That the first person of the imperfect is found by adding **-bam** to the present stem, and the first person of the future by adding **-bō** to the present stem. Thus:

amō pres. stem **amā-** imper., **amā-bam**

amō pres. stem **amā-** fut., **amā-bō**

2. That the personal endings are the same as used in the present tense. See 43.

88. Learn the principal parts, and form and conjugate the imperfect and future active of the following verbs :

pugnō, *fight*, **pugnāre**, **pugnāvī**, **pugnātus**

laudō, *praise*, **laudāre**, **laudāvī**, **laudātus**

culpō, *blame*, **culpāre**, **culpāvī**, **culpātus**

convocō, *summon*, **convocāre**, **convocāvī**, **convocātus**

89.

VOCABULARY

locus, *ī*, m. (plur.), **locī**, m., **castra**, *ōrum*, n. (plur.), *camp.*
and **loca**, n., *place.* **idōneus**, a, **um**, *fit, suitable.*

praemium, *ī*, n., *reward.* **comparō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *pre-*
pīlum, *ī*, n., *javelin.* *pare, provide.*

saxum, *ī*, n., *rock.* **contrā**, prep. with acc., *against.*

tēlum, *ī*, n., *weapon.*

90.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī filiābus agricolārum cibum nōn dant. 2. Socer generum laudat. 3. Erant in Graeciā aedificia pulchra. 4. In nigram silvam nūntiōs convocat. 5. Virī inopiam cibī et vīnī nōn amant. 6. Multī gladiī sunt semper in oppidō.

II. 1. Son, where is my sword? 2. They are carrying the grain into the large building. 3. You give my daughter many roses. 4. Why does the island please the boys?

91.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Culpābat ; laudābant ; convocābis. 2. Pugnābāmus ; comparābas ; dabunt. 3. Portābimus ; culpābitis ; laudābit. 4. Bellum contrā Gallōs comparābant. 5. Praemia idōnea virōs dēlectābunt. 6. Gallī in castra cibum et tēla portant. 7. Idōneane praemia comparābitis ? 8. Ubi est locus castrīs idōneus ? 9. Filī praemium erit pulchrum pīlum. 10. Idōnea pīla virīs dabimus. 11. Multae sagittae et pīla sunt in castrīs. 12. Gallī bellum contrā Rōmānōs comparābunt.

II. 1. You (plur.) will give ; they gave ; she was giving. 2. We praised ; he will blame ; we are summoning. 3. They will carry ; we shall give ; you (sing.) were praising. 4. We were preparing a place suitable for a camp. 5. He will give his daughter a reward. 6. The Romans prepared war against the Gauls. 7. The weapons of the Gauls were rocks and arrows.

LESSON 12

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PERFECT. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

92.

Paradigm

 PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō*, *I love*

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS WITH CONNECTING VOWEL
1. amāvī, <i>I have loved, I loved, I did love</i>	-ī
2. amāvīsti, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-īsti
3. amāvit, <i>he has loved, etc.</i>	-it
PLURAL	
1. amāvimus, <i>we have loved, etc.</i>	-imus
2. amāvīstis, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-īstis
3. amāvērunt, or amāvēre, <i>they have loved, etc.</i>	-ērunt (-ēre)

1. *The personal endings of the perfect tense are the same in all the conjugations.* Notice that these endings differ from those of the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
2. Compare the second and third translations of the perfect with those of the imperfect (87). There is this difference in the use of the two tenses: the perfect denotes a *completed* act, the imperfect an act *going on, repeated, or continued*.
3. Conjugate the perfect of the verbs in 88.

93. Examine the following :

1. **Hastis et sagittis pugnābant,** *they fought with spears and arrows.*
2. **Equīs frūmentum portābimus,** *we shall bring grain by means of horses.*

Notice that the ablatives **hastis, sagittis, equīs**, express the *means* or *instrument*, the things with which the action of the verb is accomplished.

94. **Rule of Syntax.** — *The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

95.

VOCABULARY

lēgātus, i, m., <i>ambassador,</i>	dō, dare, dedi,¹ datus, <i>give.</i>
<i>lieutenant.</i>	oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>attack,</i>
Graecī, ōrum, m. (plur.),	<i>besiege.</i>
<i>Greeks.</i>	arma, ōrum, n. (plur.), <i>arms,</i>
paucī, ae, a, few, a few.	<i>weapons.</i>
superō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>sur-</i>	hiberna, ōrum, n. (plur.), <i>winter</i>
<i>pass, conquer, overcome.</i>	<i>quarters.</i>
armō, āre, āvī, ātus, arm,	Helvētīī, ōrum, m. (plur.),
<i>equip.</i>	<i>Helvetians.</i>

¹ Note the irregular perfect.

96.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Socer meus dōna filiābus dabit. 2. Nautae fidī contrā Rōmānōs pugnābant. 3. Tēla idōnea in castra portābunt. 4. Cōpia magna tēlōrum est in locō. 5. Servi pigri multum frūmentum in aedificia nōn portābant. 6. Locus magnō proeliō nōn erit idōneus.

II. 1. The camp of the Romans was large. 2. Why did he give the inhabitants weapons? 3. We shall carry many spears and arrows into the town. 4. He was praising the queen's forces.

97.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnāvistī; dedistīne? laudāvimus. 2. Incolae oppidī multa arma comparāvērunt. 3. Helvētīi oppidum saxīs et armīs oppugnābant. 4. Equīs in aedificium cibum portāvit. 5. Arma pauca virīs dedimus. 6. Cūr Rōmānī Graecōs superāvērunt? 7. Lēgātus multum frūmentum in hiberna portāvit. 8. Rōmānī Helvētiōrum oppida sagittīs et pilīs oppugnābant. 9. Incolās īnsulae tēlis armābimus. 10. In hibernīs sunt pauca tēla et multus cibus. 11. Gallōs hastīs et sagittīs superāvit. 12. Locus est hibernīs idōneus.

II. 1. You (plur.) have given; did he blame? 2. We have equipped; they were conquering; she gave. 3. The Gauls fought with spears and arrows. 4. The Romans have attacked the camp of the Greeks. 5. By means of rewards he summoned the Helvetians.



Pilum

LESSON 13

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PLUPERFECT AND
FUTURE PERFECT. REVIEW

98. Review 81.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **amō**, *I love*

SINGULAR

1. **amāveram**, *I had loved*
2. **amāverās**, *you had loved*
3. **amāverat**, *he had loved*

PLURAL

1. **amāverāmus**, *we had loved*
2. **amāverātis**, *you had loved*
3. **amāverant**, *they had loved*

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amāverō**, *I shall have loved*
2. **amāveris**, *you will have loved*
3. **amāverit**, *he will have loved*

PLURAL

1. **amāverimus**, *we shall have loved*
2. **amāveritis**, *you will have loved*
3. **amāverint**, *they will have loved*

1. The pluperfect is formed by the perfect stem **amāv-** and **eram**; the future perfect by the same stem and **erō**. There is an exception in one form of the future perfect. Which?

99. Review carefully 43, 85, 86, 87, 92. Observe that the *present stem* is used in the formation of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, and the *perfect stem* in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

TABLE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Present Tense,	First one of the principal parts.
Imperfect Tense,	Present stem + bam .
Future Tense,	Present stem + bō .
Perfect Tense,	Third one of the principal parts.
Pluperfect Tense,	Perfect stem + eram .
Future Perfect Tense,	Perfect stem + erō .

100. Give the principal parts, and form the first person singular of all tenses of the indicative, adding the English meanings, of the following verbs that have occurred in the previous vocabularies :

laudō	pugnō	superō
culpō	dō	oppugnō
vocō	portō	dēlectō
convocō	armō	servō
	comparō	

1. Give the complete conjugation of all tenses of the indicative of at least three verbs in this list.

101.

VOCABULARY

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>hasten.</i>	mox, adv., <i>soon.</i>
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>capture, take by storm.</i>	ferus, a, um, <i>wild, barbarous.</i>
ad, prep. with acc., <i>to, towards, near.</i>	impedimentum, ī, n., <i>hindrance; (plur.), baggage.</i>
	vīcus, ī, m., <i>village.</i>

102.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gladiis et sagittis incolās oppidī superāvērunt. 2. Contrā Rōmānōs bellum Gallī comparābunt. 3. In oppidō Helvētiōrum erit cibī inopia. 4. Lēgātus agricolās pīlis armāvit. 5. Gladium pulchrum Mārcō nautae peritō dedērunt. 6. In castra puellās et puerōs convocabant.

II. 1. There was an abundance of grain in my friend's fields. 2. The arrows, a gift of the queen, pleased the messenger. 3. He will not fight with weapons. 4. They have given the woman a beautiful horse. 5. Has he armed many slaves?

103.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mātūrāverās; laudāveris; expugnāverant. 2. Portāveritis; dēlectāverātis; dederāmus. 3. Arma comparāre¹ mātūrāvit. 4. Parvum Helvētiōrum oppidum expugnāverant. 5. Impedīmenta multa in vicum portāverimus. 6. Dōna ad rēgīnam portābant. 7. Rēgīnae cōpiaē erant ferae. 8. Ad² oppidum erat frūmentī cōpia. 9. Vicōs multōs Gallōrum mox oppugnāverit. 10. Gladiis ad² impedīmenta pugnāverant. 11. Multam pecūniam incolīs nōn dedimus. 12. Mox in agrīs lātīs Gallōrum erit frūmentum.

II. 1. He will hasten; he will have hastened. 2. They had given; we have given; you will have praised. 3. He had carried much baggage into the town. 4. They will soon have taken by storm many towns. 5. Why did he not hasten to provide grain? 6. Near the beautiful village were broad fields.

¹ Present infinitive, *to provide*. See 85.

² *near*.

LESSON 14

SECOND CONJUGATION. CHARACTERISTICS. FORMATION AND CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

104. All verbs whose present stem ends in *ē* are classed under the Second Conjugation. The various tenses of these verbs are formed from the principal parts precisely like those of the First Conjugation. Review 86, 87, 98, 99.

moneō, I advise or warn

PRIN. PARTS : **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**

PRES.	moneō	PERF.	monuī
IMPERF.	monēbam	PLUP.	monueram
FUT.	monēbō	FUT. PERF.	monuerō

105.

CONJUGATION OF PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **moneō**

SINGULAR

1. **moneō, I advise, am advising, do advise**
2. **monēs, you advise, etc.**
3. **monet, he advises, etc.**

PLURAL

1. **monēmus, we advise, etc.**
2. **monētis, you advise, etc.**
3. **monent, they advise, etc.**

1. Observe that the *-ē-* of the present stem, unlike the *-ā-* of **amō**, is retained before the personal ending *-o* of the first person singular.
2. What is the characteristic vowel before the personal endings of **moneō**? of **amō**?

106.

CONJUGATION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **moneō**

SINGULAR

1. **mónuī**, *I have advised, I advised, I did advise*
2. **monuísti**, *you have advised, etc.*
3. **mónuit**, *he has advised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. **monúimus**, *we have advised, etc.*
2. **monuístis**, *you have advised, etc.*
3. **monuērunt** or **monuēre**, *they have advised, etc.*

1. Note carefully the accent of the above forms, and observe that the personal endings are like those of the perfect of **amō**. Note that the perfect stem **monu-** does not end in **v**, as in **amō**, perfect stem **amāv-**.

107. The various tenses of verbs of the Second Conjugation are conjugated like those of the First Conjugation, with the exception noted in 105, 1 and 2. Form and conjugate the tenses of the indicative active of the following verbs:

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *I have, hold*
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *I see*

108.

VOCABULARY

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus , <i>advise, warn.</i>	moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus , <i>move.</i>
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus , <i>have, hold.</i>	dimicō, āre, āvī, ātus , <i>fight, contend.</i>
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus , <i>see.</i>	praeda , <i>ae, f., booty, spoil.</i>
terreō, terrēre, terruī, terri-	periculum , <i>i, n., danger.</i>
tus , <i>frighten, scare.</i>	cum , <i>prep. with abl., with.</i>

109.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Saxīs armīs Gallī cum Rōmānīs pūgnābant.
 2. Magnum bellum contrā Rōmānōs comparāverant.
 3. Ad portam liberōs portāvērunt. 4. Librōs paucōs
 amīcō meō dedī. 5. In hiberna multa arma Rōmānī portā-
 bunt. 6. Cūr filiās meās fābulae dēlectāvērunt?

II. 1. They armed the fierce inhabitants with javelins.
 2. Near the camp were a few buildings. 3. We do not
 always take the towns by storm. 4. Have you given my
 friend a book?

110.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Movēbat; vīdit; terruerat. 2. Vīderimus; mōvistī;
 habēbis. 3. Mōverant; terruērunt; mōverint. 4. Rōmānī
 cum Helvētiīs dīmīcābant. 5. Perīculum magnum oppidī
 incolās terruerat. 6. Praedam in vīcīs multam vīdērunt.
 7. Gallī cōpiās ad oppidum mōverant. 8. Vīdistine tuum
 perīculum? 9. Puerī praemia multa habēbunt. 10. Rō-
 mānī gladiīs et pīlīs agricolās terruērunt. 11. Mox cōpiam
 frūmentī habuerit. 12. Praeda pigrōs nautās dēlectābit.

II. 1. She had seen; he has frightened; he will have
 had. 2. We had moved; you (plur.) have seen; they have
 fought. 3. The Gauls moved much spoil into camp.
 4. They had contended with the men. 5. The messenger
 frightened the lieutenant by the story. 6. There is great
 danger in wine.

LESSON 15

THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS

111. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a consonant or **-i-**.

112. CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

Stem and Base }	dux , m., <i>leader, general</i>	miles , m., <i>soldier</i>	virtūs , f., <i>virtue</i>	caput , n., <i>head</i>
	duc-	milit-	virtūt-	capit-

TERMINATIONS
OF CONSONANT STEMS*M. and F. N.*

SINGULAR					
NOM.	dux	mīles	virtūs	caput	(-s)
GEN.	ducis	militis	virtūtis	capitis	-is -is
DAT.	ducī	militī	virtūtī	capitī	-ī -ī
ACC.	ducem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	-em
ABL.	duce	mīlite	virtūte	capite	-e -e

PLURAL

NOM.	ducēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs -ā
GEN.	ducum	militum	virtutum	capitum	-um -um
DAT.	ducibus	militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	-ibus -ibus
ACC.	ducēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs -a
ABL.	ducibus	militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	-ibus -ibus

I. Note that the stem and base are alike in nouns with consonant stems (but see 122, 2). The base is obtained by dropping the ending **-is** of the genitive singular.

2. To decline a noun, therefore, one must know the gender, the nominative, and the genitive. *Be sure to learn these facts about all the nouns given in the vocabularies.*
3. Observe that the nominative singular is not always like the stem. Various changes are made in its formation from the stem. No rule can be given.
4. Learn thoroughly the terminations, observing which are alike. See 56.
5. Decline **rēx bonus**, *the good king*.

113.

VOCABULARY

dux , ducis , m., <i>leader, general.</i>	rēx , rēgis , m., <i>king.</i>
miles , militis , m., <i>soldier.</i>	fuga , ae, f., <i>flight.</i>
virtūs , virtūtis , f., <i>manliness, bravery, virtue.</i>	in fugam dō , dare , dedi , datus , <i>put to flight.</i>
caput , capitis , n., <i>head.</i>	augeō , augēre , auxi , auctus , <i>increase.</i>
eques , equitis , m., <i>horseman;</i> (plur.) <i>cavalry.</i>	

114.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Ad portam generum vidit. 2. Cūr cum incolīs ferīs dimicābant? 3. Perīculum filiī videt. 4. Perīculum agricolās perītōs nōn terrēbit. 5. Praedam multam in castrīs viderant. 6. Dabitne pecūniam mox filiae?

II. 1. We have not seen much grain in winter quarters. 2. The fierce inhabitants have overcome the farmers. 3. The war had not frightened the queen. 4. They will besiege the town.

115.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capitibus; virtūtī; capita. 2. Eques equum laudābat. 3. Militēs impedīmenta in castra portāverant.

4. Equitēs Gallōrum in fugam dant. 5. Proelium mīlitum virtūtem augēbit. 6. Capita multōrum equitum vīdimus. 7. Virtūs mīlitum ducem dēlectāvit. 8. Rēx nōn semper est mīlitum dux. 9. Cōpiās dux nōn auxerat. 10. Gladiīs equitēs in fugam dedērunt. 11. Mīlitibus incolās ferōs dux terrēbat. 12. Frūmentum multum equitēs in oppida portābunt.

II. 1. For the soldier; the heads of the horses. 2. The leader summoned his soldiers into camp. 3. The Gauls will put the horsemen to flight. 4. The king gave the leader a beautiful sword. 5. The general increased the supply¹ of grain. 6. There were many soldiers in winter quarters.

¹ copia.



Eques

LESSON 16

 THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). CONSONANT STEMS.
 ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

116.

CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

	cōnsul , m., <i>consul</i> ¹	homō , m., <i>man</i>	pater , m., <i>father</i>	corpus , n., <i>body</i>
Stem } and } Base }	cōnsul-	homin-	patr-	corpor-

SINGULAR

NOM.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōnsulī	hominī	patri	corporī
ACC.	cōnsule m	homin e m	patr e m	corp u s
ABL.	cōnsule	homine	patre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōnsul u m	homin u m	patr u m	corpor u m
DAT.	cōnsul i bus	homin i bus	patr i bus	corpor i bus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōnsul i bus	homin i bus	patr i bus	corpor i bus

1. Are the terminations of these nouns like those of the previous lesson?
2. Decline together **pater bonus, corpus magnum**.

¹ The name of a Roman civil officer.

117. Examine the following :

1. **Dux victoriā laetus est**, *the general is glad because of the victory.*
2. **Hominēs cibi inopiā labōrābant**, *the men suffered from (on account of) lack of food.*

Observe (a) that the ablatives **victoriā**, **inopiā**, express the *cause* or *reason*; (b) the various ways of translating these ablatives, *because of*, *on account of*, *from*.

Review 93, 94.

118. Rule of Syntax. — *Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.*

119.

VOCABULARY

cōsul, cōsuliis, m., <i>consul.</i>	tempus, temporis, n., <i>time,</i>
homō, hominis, m., <i>man.</i>	<i>season.</i>
pater, patris, m., <i>father.</i>	vulnus, vulneris, n., <i>wound.</i>
corpus, corporis, n., <i>body.</i>	vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>wound.</i>
flūmen, flūminis, n., <i>river.</i>	labōrō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>work,</i>
pēs, pedis, m., <i>foot.</i>	<i>suffer.</i>
pedes, peditis, m., <i>foot-</i>	trāns, prep. with acc., <i>across,</i>
<i>soldier; plur., infantry.</i>	<i>over.</i>

120.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Virtūs equitum Gallōs superābat. 2. Virtūte militēs in fugam dedimus. 3. Militēs perītī in castra arma portāverunt. 4. Ducī fidō pecūniam multam Rōmānī dederant. 5. Frūmentī magna cōpia erit mox in vicō. 6. Cūr ad portās oppidī tēla portāvit?

II. 1. Near the village we saw many soldiers. 2. The king increased the men's courage by the story. 3. They had had much grain in winter quarters. 4. My son's stories were good. 5. He gave the horseman a black horse.

121.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Peditem gladiō meō vulnerābam. 2. Vulnera multa sunt in corporibus militum. 3. Tempus est proeliō idōneum. 4. Hominēs pecūniae inopiā labōrābunt. 5. Ad pedēs rēgis erant miserī incolae oppidī. 6. Mīles vulnere labōrāverat. 7. Peditēs cōsul trāns flūmen convocāvit. 8. Peditēs incolās multōs pīlis vulnerāvērunt. 9. Mīlītēs dux culpābat. 10. Meō vulnere sum miser. 11. Homō filiōs in hortum convocābit. 12. Pedes multōs mīlītēs trāns flūmen vīdit.

II. 1. They put the foot-soldiers to flight across the river. 2. We are suffering from many wounds. 3. The inhabitants were wretched because of lack of food. 4. The soldier wounded the sailor with an arrow. 5. The consul will not blame my father. 6. The consul gave the foot-soldier a beautiful sword.



Pedēs

LESSON 17

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). STEMS IN -i-

122.

STEMS IN -i-

Paradigms

	collis, m., <i>hill</i>	caedēs, f., <i>slaughter</i>	mōns, m., <i>mountain</i>	animal, n., <i>animal</i>
Stem	colli-	caedi-	monti-	animāli-
Base	coll-	caed-	mont-	animāl-

SINGULAR

TERMINATIONS
OF -i- STEMS*M. and F. N.*

				(-s)	
NOM.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal	
GEN.	collis	caedis	montis	animālis	-is -is
DAT.	colli	caedi	monti	animāli	-ī -ī
ACC.	collem	caedem	montem	animal	-em
ABL.	colle	caede	monte	animāli	-e -ī

PLURAL

NOM.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	-ēs -ia
GEN.	collium	caedum	montium	animālium	-ium -ium
DAT.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus -ibus
ACC.	collis,ēs	caedis,ēs	montis,ēs	animālia	-is,-ēs -ia
ABL.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus -ibus

1. Compare very carefully these terminations with those of 112. In what two cases of masculine and feminine nouns is there a difference? In what four cases of neuters?
2. Observe that the base and stem differ. See 112, 1.

3. The following sometimes have the ablative singular in *-ī* and *-e*: *nāvis, ship*; *ignis, fire*; *cīvis, citizen*; *turris, tower*; *fīnis, end*; *avis, bird*. All neuter *-i-* stems have the ablative singular in *-ī*. A few nouns sometimes have the accusative singular in *-im*: *turris, turrim, tower*.
4. Decline together: *urbs pulchra, beautiful city*; *animal magnum, large animal*.

123. Since nouns with *-i-* stems are declined differently from those with consonant stems, one must know what nouns of the third declension have *-i-* stems. The following classes have *-i-* stems, and they must be thoroughly learned:

1. Nouns in *-is* and *-es*, having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.
2. Neuters in *-e, -al, -ar*.
3. Nouns of one syllable in *-s* or *-x* following a consonant.
4. Nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*.

124. Decline the following:

<i>mare, maris, n., sea.</i>	<i>nōmen, nōminis, n., name.</i>
<i>urbs, urbis, f., city.</i>	<i>pars, partis, f., part.</i>
<i>miles, militis, m., soldier.</i>	<i>pōns, pontis, m., bridge.</i>
<i>hostis, hostis, m. and f., enemy.</i>	<i>sedile, sedilis, n., seat.</i>

125.

VOCABULARY

(Make a list of the nouns with *-i* stems.)

<i>collis, collis, m., hill.</i>	<i>animal, animālis, n., animal.</i>
<i>caedēs, caedis, f., slaughter.</i>	<i>nāvis, nāvis, f., ship.</i>
<i>mōns, montis, m., mountain.</i>	<i>per, prep. with acc. through, by means of.</i>
<i>occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, take possession of, seize, occupy.</i>	<i>dē, prep. with abl., down from, from, concerning.</i>

126.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Meī patris amīcus vulnere labōrāvit. 2. Longa via pigrum peditem nōn dēlectābit. 3. Gallī equitum perītōrum inopiā labōrābant. 4. Vulnēra multa in corporibus militum vidistī. 5. Peditēs trāns flūmen lātum in fugam dedērunt. 6. Tempus equitum virtūtem augēbit.

II. 1. At the king's feet there are many slaves. 2. The general is summoning the men across the river into camp. 3. The soldiers have suffered from the lack of a skillful leader. 4. They had wounded my son with a javelin.

127.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Militēs dē monte in vīcum impedīmenta portābant. 2. In nāvibus erant nautae multī et validī. 3. Per perītōs militēs partem urbis expugnābit. 4. Miser erat cōsul caede militum validōrum. 5. Dux cum peditibus collem occupāvit. 6. In marī sunt nāvēs pulchrae. 7. Virtūs hostium equitēs terrēbat. 8. In monte erant animālia fera et multa. 9. Cōsul militibus et nāvibus hostēs superāverat. 10. Dux dē collibus Gallōs in urbem convocābat.

II. 1. A large part of the city is beautiful. 2. There were many¹ lazy sailors on the ships. 3. The horsemen took possession of the bridge. 4. The Romans are glad on account of the slaughter of the enemy. 5. They hastened from the hill into the broad fields.

¹ *Many lazy* = "many and lazy." See 127, I, 2, 8.

LESSON 18

REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION. GENDER. ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

128. Gender.—The rules for gender in 27 apply to nouns of all declensions, and take precedence over the special rules for each declension.

The general rules for gender for the third declension are these, but there are many exceptions :

Masculine.—Nouns in **-es** or **-ēs** having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative, and those in **-ō**, **-or**, **-ōs**, and **-er**.

Feminine.—Nouns in **-ēs** not having more syllables in the genitive than the nominative, and those in **-ās**, **-is**, **-aus**, **-x**, **-s** preceded by a consonant.

Neuter.—Nouns in **-c**, **-l**, **-e**, **-a**, **-n**, **-i**, **-t**, **-ar**, **-ur**, **-us**, **-ūs**.

1. What are the rules of gender for the first and second declensions ?

129. REVIEW TABLE OF NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION

Give for each noun (1) gender, (2) meaning, (3) genitive singular, (4) ablative singular, (5) nominative plural, (6) genitive plural. Review carefully 122, 123.

animal	dux	mare	pater	rēx
caedēs	eques	mōns	pēs	tempus
caput	flūmen	mīles	pedes	urbs
cōnsul	homō	nāvis	pōns	vulnus
collis	hostis	nōmen	pars	virtūs

130. Examine the following :

1. **Hieme labōrāmus**, *in winter we work.*
2. **Decem mēnsibus multās urbēs vīdit**, *within ten months he saw many cities.*
3. **Primā lūce hostēs in fugam dedērunt**, *at daybreak they put the enemy to flight.*

Observe that the ablatives **hieme**, **decem mēnsibus**, **primā lūce**, tell *when* or *within what time* the action of the verb took place, and that no preposition is used in Latin.

131. **Rule of Syntax.** — *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative.*

132.

VOCABULARY

nox , noctis , f. (gen. plur. noctium), <i>night.</i>	annus , i , m., <i>year.</i>
hiems , hiemis , f., <i>winter.</i>	primus , a , um , <i>first.</i>
aestās , aestātis , f., <i>summer.</i>	decem , indecl., <i>ten.</i>
lūx , lūcis , f., <i>light, daylight.</i>	quattuor , indecl., <i>four.</i>
	multā nocte , <i>late at night.</i>

133.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Aestāte agrī pulchrī incolās urbis dēlectant.**
 2. **Primā lūce**¹ **montēs multōs vīdimus.** 3. **Hostēs tēlīs equitēs vulnerābant.** 4. **Quattuor annīs oppida multa hostium dux expugnāverat.** 5. **Cibī inopiā Gallī hieme labōrābant.** 6. **Multā nocte peditēs in castra cōsul convocābit.** 7. **Multās urbēs decem annīs dux Helvētiōrum occupāverat.** 8. **Prīmō annō bellī multa oppida expugnāverat.** 9. **Primā lūce hostēs in castrīs erant.**

II. 1. He captured the city by means of his cavalry.
 2. At night the enemy hastened toward the Romans' camp.

¹ **Primā lūce**, *at daybreak.*

3. Within four years you will see many beautiful things.¹
4. Night frightens the poor children. 5. At daybreak we carried our weapons into the camp. 6. Ten years is a long time. 7. In ten years there are ten summers.

LESSON 19

READING LESSON

134.

JULIUS CAESAR

Julius Caesar is the greatest character in Roman history. He was great, not merely as a general, but also as an orator and statesman. He was born on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. He belonged to an old, aristocratic family, but at an early age allied himself with the party of the people.

After filling many minor political offices, at the age of forty-one he became consul, and formed a political alliance with Pompey and Crassus, known as the "First Triumvirate." The next year the government of Gaul was assigned to him, and it is the subjugation of this country that he describes in his Commentaries. These Gallic Commentaries have been read in schools for hundreds of years, and they establish conclusively his ability as a writer.

After spending eight years in Gaul, he was ordered by the Senate through the jealousy of Pompey to disband his army. Caesar refused, and, crossing the Rubicon, set out with his army to make himself the master of Rome. In the civil war that followed, Pompey at the head of the senatorial forces was defeated. This left Caesar the master of the government at Rome. As Dictator and Imperator for life he instituted many reforms that show his insight as

¹ The neuter plural **pulchra** means *beautiful things*.

a statesman. There were many Romans, however, who disliked Caesar's power. A conspiracy was formed, and Caesar was assassinated on March 15, 44 B.C.



Head of Julius Caesar
(From a silver coin, 38-36 B.C.)

135. THE HELVETIAN WAR

The Helvetii were people of Celtic origin who inhabited almost all that region now known as Switzerland.

In the year 58 B.C., incited by ambitious leaders, they decided to leave their homes and seize the more fertile lands to the southwest, lying nearer the Roman province in Gaul. It is to this uprising of the Helvetii that Caesar devotes the first thirty chapters of his first book of Gallic Commentaries. After two battles the Helvetii, being completely subdued by Caesar, were forced to return to their former territories.

The reading lessons that follow are adapted from the first ten chapters of Caesar's account of this Helvetian war.

136. HINTS FOR TRANSLATION

I. Read the passage through several times in Latin, and gather as much of its meaning as possible.

2. Try to associate unfamiliar words with some related word that you already know.

3. Do not look up the meaning of a new word in the vocabulary until you have used every other means to get its meaning. After you have looked up its meaning, take time to fix it in your memory.

4. In trying to get the thought of a passage, follow strictly the Latin order, noticing particularly the endings of the words.

5. Translate into clear and idiomatic English.

CHAPTER I

READING LESSON

DESCRIPTION OF GAUL

(The student should consult the general vocabulary for words that have not been given in the special vocabularies.)

137. Belgae¹ et Aquitānī et Celtæ Galliam incolunt.² Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs appellant. Belgæ sunt fortissimī (*the bravest*) et cum Germānīs saepe pugnant. Helvētīi sunt Celtārum fortissimī, quod (*because*) cum Germānīs continenter pugnant. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et ad eam (*that*) partem Ōceanī quæ (*which*) est ad Hispāniam pertinet.

NOTE. — Learn the principal parts of all verbs of the first and second conjugations. Decline all nouns and adjectives.

¹ For this name and other proper names, see the map, page 10.

² Third person plural, present indicative, of *incolō*. Can you not infer its meaning from *incola*?

LESSON 20

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND
SECOND CONJUGATIONS. ABLATIVE OF AGENT

138. Review 25, 3. A verb is in the Active Voice when it represents the subject as acting or being: *the farmer plows the field*; in the Passive Voice when it represents the subject as acted upon (*i.e.* the subject does nothing, and is passive): *the field is plowed by the farmer*.

139.**Paradigms**

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

SINGULAR

PERSONAL ENDINGS

1. amō, *I love, am loving, do love*
2. amās, *you love, etc.*
3. amat, *he loves, etc.*

-ō
-s
-t

PLURAL

1. amāmus, *we love, etc.*
2. amātis, *you love, etc.*
3. amant, *they love, etc.*

-mus
-tis
-nt

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1. amor, *I am loved, am being loved*
2. amāris, amāre, *you are loved, etc.*
3. amātur, *he is loved, etc.*

-r
-ris, -re
-tur

PLURAL

1. amāmur, *we are loved, etc.*
2. amāmini, *you are loved, etc.*
3. amantur, *they are loved, etc.*

-mur
-mini
-ntur

ACTIVE VOICE

SECOND CONJUGATION

SINGULAR

PERSONAL ENDINGS

- | | |
|---|----|
| 1. moneō, <i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i> | -ō |
| 2. monēs, <i>you advise, etc.</i> | -s |
| 3. monet, <i>he advises, etc.</i> | -t |

PLURAL

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| 1. monēmus, <i>we advise, etc.</i> | -mus |
| 2. monētis, <i>you advise, etc.</i> | -tis |
| 3. monent, <i>they advise, etc.</i> | -nt |

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. moneor, <i>I am advised, am being advised</i> | -r |
| 2. monēris, monēre, <i>you are advised, etc.</i> | -ris, -re |
| 3. monētur, <i>he is advised, etc.</i> | -tur |

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. monēmur, <i>we are advised, etc.</i> | -mur |
| 2. monēmini, <i>you are advised, etc.</i> | -mini |
| 3. monentur, <i>they are advised, etc.</i> | -ntur |

1. Compare very carefully the English translations of the active and passive forms.
2. Review the active personal endings, and learn thoroughly the passive endings. They are the same for the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
3. Observe that these passive endings are added directly to the present stems **amā-** and **monē-**, except in the first person singular.

140. Conjugate the present active and passive, giving English translations, of the following:

laudō, *I praise*

vocō, *I call*

videō, *I see*

terreō, *I frighten*

141. Examine the following :

1. *Coniūrātī Caesarem necant*, *the conspirators kill Caesar.*
2. *Caesar ā coniūrātis necātur*, *Caesar is killed by the conspirators.*
3. *Caesar gladiō necātur*, *Caesar is killed by (with) a sword.*

1. Observe the changes in turning the active into the passive :

- a.* The object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive ;
- b.* The subject, *i.e.* the *agent* or *doer*, in the active is expressed in the passive by the ablative with *ā*.

2. Review 93, 94. Compare carefully 2 and 3, and note that a preposition is used when that which does the action of the verb is a person, while none is used when it is not a voluntary agent, *i.e.* not a person.

142. **Rule of Syntax.**—*The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

143.

VOCABULARY

(Review the meanings of verbs in 100, 108.)

Caesar, aris, m., <i>Caesar.</i>	celeritās, ātis, f., <i>speed, quickness.</i>
legiō, ōnis, f., <i>legion.</i> ¹	
necō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>kill.</i>	incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.</i>
ā, ab, ² prep. with abl., <i>from, by.</i>	ē, ex, ² prep. with abl., <i>out of, from.</i>
ob, prep. with acc., <i>on account of, for.</i>	

¹ The Roman legion consisted of about 5000 soldiers.

² Before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*, use **ab** or **ex**; use **ā** or **ē** before a consonant.

144.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī hieme et aestāte cum hostibus pugnābant. 2. Tēlīs hostēs Rōmānī in fugam dedērunt. 3. Quattuor annīs multās nāvis in marī viderant. 4. Cōpiās in castra multā nocte cōsul convocāvit. 5. Pōns in¹ flūmine erat. 6. Caede liberōrum miserōrum sumus miserī.

II. 1. In winter the nights are long. 2. Caesar's cavalry took possession of the hill at daybreak. 3. There are many ships on the sea. 4. The Romans did not suffer from a lack of leaders.

145.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudat, laudātur; vidētis, vidēminī. 2. Incitant, incitantur; vocāmus, vocāmur. 3. Caesar milītēs convocat. 4. Milītēs ā Caesare convocantur. 5. Dux legiōnem ob virtūtem laudat. 6. Legiō ā duce ob virtūtem laudātur. 7. Hostēs celeritāte equitum terrentur. 8. Magna cibī cōpia ab militibus in castra portātur. 9. Virtūte militum incolae oppidi incitantur. 10. Ex agrīs frūmentum ab militibus in hiberna portātur. 11. Multā nocte ā pedite gladiō vulnerātur.

II. 1. We are summoned; he is calling; he is called. 2. You (plur.) blame; you (plur.) are blamed. 3. The quickness of the Romans frightens the Gauls. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the quickness of the Romans. 5. Caesar encourages his soldiers. 6. The soldiers are encouraged by Caesar. 7. They are summoned from the mountains to the city.

¹over.

LESSON 21

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND
SECOND CONJUGATIONS. ABLATIVE OF MANNER

146.

Paradigms

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābar, *I was loved, was
being loved*
2. amābāris, amābāre, *you
were loved, etc.*
3. amābātur, *he was loved,
etc.*

SINGULAR

1. monēbar, *I was advised,
was being advised*
2. monēbāris, monēbāre, *you
were advised, etc.*
3. monēbātur, *he was ad-
vised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. amābāmur, *we were loved,
etc.*
2. amābāminī, *you were
loved, etc.*
3. amābantur, *they were
loved, etc.*

PLURAL

1. monēbāmur, *we were ad-
vised, etc.*
2. monēbāminī, *you were ad-
vised, etc.*
3. monēbantur, *they were
advised, etc.*

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābor, *I shall be loved*
2. amāberis, amābere, *you
will be loved*
3. amābitur, *he will be loved*

SINGULAR

1. monēbor, *I shall be ad-
vised*
2. monēberis, monēbere, *you
will be advised*
3. monēbitur, *he will be ad-
vised*

PLURAL

1. amābimur, *we shall be loved*
2. amābiminī, *you will be loved*
3. amābuntur, *they will be loved*

PLURAL

1. monēbimur, *we shall be advised*
2. monēbiminī, *you will be advised*
3. monēbuntur, *they will be advised*

Observe

1. That the personal endings are the same as those of the present passive (139).
2. That the vowel before these endings is **a** in the imperfect, and that the vowel changes in the future. What is the characteristic vowel of the future?
3. That the imperfect and future passive are formed on the present stems **amā-** and **monē-** by adding **-bar** and **-bor** respectively. Review 86, 87.

147. Examine the following :

1. Agricola cum cūrā arat, *the farmer plows with care (carefully).*
2. Agricola magnā cum cūrā arat } *the farmer plows with*
3. Agricola magnā cūrā arat } *great care (very carefully).*

Observe

1. That the Latin expressions **cum cūrā**, **magnā cum cūrā**, **magnā cūrā**, express the manner of the action of the verb.
2. That **magnā cum cūrā** and **magnā cūrā** are translated in the same way.
3. That these Latin expressions may be translated by adverbs in English.

148. Rule of Syntax. — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum, but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

149.

VOCABULARY

studium, ī, n., <i>zeal, eagerness.</i>	imperātor, ōris, m., <i>general,</i>
cūra, ae, f., <i>care.</i>	<i>commander in chief.</i>
obses, obsidis, m. and f., <i>host-</i>	conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>place,</i>
<i>age, pledge.</i>	<i>station.</i>
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.,	complēō, complēre, complēvi,
<i>multitude, crowd.</i>	<i>complētus, fill up, complete.</i>
imperium, ī, n., <i>command,</i>	diū, adv., <i>long, for a long</i>
<i>power.</i>	<i>time.</i>

150.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Equium celeritāte Rōmānī terrentur. 2. Caesar lēgātō equum pulchrum dat. 3. Lēgātō ā Caesare equus pulcher datur. 4. Hieme frūmentī inopiā hostēs labōrābant. 5. Magna urbis pars ā Gallis occupātur. 6. Militēs ā rēge in hiberna convocantur.

II. 1. We suffered from many wounds. 2. At night the consul took possession of the mountain. 3. The lazy boys are not praised by my father. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the speed and bravery of the soldiers.

151.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudābat, laudābātur; vidēbunt, vidēbuntur. 2. Portābāmus, portābāmur; superābis, superāberis. 3. In agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 4. In castrīs cum cūrā legiō conlocābitur. 5. In colle diū cum hostibus dīmīcābant. 6. Oppidum ab imperātōre magnō studiō oppugnābātur. 7. Caesarī imperium dabitur. 8. Urbem equitum multitūdine complēvit. 9. Liberōs multōs obsidēs Caesarī Galli dederant. 10. Equitēsne ā duce laudābuntur?

II. 1. You will hold, you will be held. 2. Are we praising? he will be blamed. 3. They were wounded by the infantry with swords. 4. At daybreak the Romans fought bravely. 5. A large part of the arms was carried very carefully into camp. 6. Many soldiers were seen near the bridge.

LESSON 22

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

152. Review 39, 81, 86. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of all Latin verbs have compound forms. They employ the perfect passive participle and the present, imperfect, and future tenses respectively of the auxiliary verb **sum**. The participle is like an adjective in form and syntax, and its endings change to agree with the gender and number of the subject of the verb.

Paradigms

PERFECT PASSIVE OF **amō**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amātus sum , <i>I have been loved, I was loved</i>	amāti sumus
2. amātus es	amāti estis
3. amātus est	amāti sunt

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE

1. amātus eram , <i>I had been loved</i>	amāti erāmus
2. amātus erās	amāti erātis
3. amātus erat	amāti erant

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|--------------|
| 1. amātus erō, <i>I shall have
been loved</i> | amātī erimus |
| 2. amātus eris | amātī eritis |
| 3. amātus erit | amātī erunt |

1. In the same way, form and conjugate these same tenses of **moneō**, **videō**, **portō**, giving English meanings.
2. Note carefully that the participle is declined like **bonus**, and that its endings conform to the gender and number of the subject; for example,

I (a girl) have been loved, amāta sum
we (girls) have been loved, amātae sumus
the town had been seen, oppidum visum erat
the girl has been loved, puella amāta est

3. For the difference in meaning between the perfect and the imperfect passive see 92, 2.

153.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|--|
| amīcītia, ae, f., <i>friendship,</i>
<i>alliance.</i> | cīvis, cīvis, m. and f., <i>citizen.</i> |
| pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace.</i> | cīvitās, ātis, f., <i>state, citizen-</i>
<i>ship.</i> |
| mēnsis, mēnsis, m., <i>month.</i> | cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus,
<i>strengthen, establish.</i> |
| iter, itineris, n., <i>march, road,</i>
<i>journey (476).</i> | contineō, continēre, continui,
<i>contentus, hold together,</i>
<i>restrain.</i> |
| ex itinere, <i>on the march.</i> | |

154.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Vulnerātī erātis; vidēbāmus; incitātae sunt.
2. Laudātane est? laudātī erant; culpātae erunt. 3. Pāx

cum multis civitatibus est confirmata. 4. Cives ob amicitiam laudavimus. 5. Galli montibus et fluminibus continentur. 6. Oppida multa decem mensibus erant occupata. 7. Magna Helvetiorum urbs ex itinere est expugnata. 8. Frumentum multum ex agris in hiberna portatum erat. 9. Caesar milites in castris tenebat. 10. Homines multi a Romanis erant necati. 11. Multos civis in Italia vidimus. 12. Urbs ab imperatore magno cum studio oppugnata est.

II. 1. She was restrained; you (plur.) had been blamed. 2. We (fem. plur.) shall have been pleased; they have been summoned. 3. Peace and friendship have been established with the Gauls. 4. The citizens had been aroused by their leaders. 5. The girl was carefully carried into the city. 6. The soldiers were praised by the general for their bravery. 7. Caesar attacked a town of the Helvetians on the march. 8. The cavalry had been wounded by the weapons of the enemy.

*Civis*

LESSON 23

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. THREE
TERMINATIONS. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

155. Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes according as they have in the nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

ācer, sharp, keen, eager

Stem *ācri-*

Base *ācr-*

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
GEN.	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
DAT.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
ABL.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
GEN.	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
DAT.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrīs, ēs</i>	<i>ācrīs, ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
ABL.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

1. Note that adjectives of this declension have *-i-* stems, and that the ablative singular ends in *-ī*. Review 122.

156. Examine the following :

1. *Helvētīī Gallōs virtūte superant, the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in valor.*

2. **Vir nōmine sed nōn factis amicus erat,** *the man was a friend in name but not in deeds.*

Observe that the ablatives **virtūte, nōmine, factis**, tell in *what respect* the meaning of the verb or noun is true; the first sentence tells that the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in respect to *valor*, not in size, speed, or in any other respect.

157. Rule of Syntax. — *The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies. No preposition is used.*

158.

VOCABULARY

altus, a, um, <i>high, deep.</i>	finis, finis, m., <i>end; (plur.)</i>
angustus, a, um, <i>narrow, contracted.</i>	<i>boundary, territory.</i>
noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours.</i>	finitimus, a, um, <i>neighboring, adjoining; finitimī, ōrum, m., neighbors.</i>
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen, sharp, eager.</i>	quod, conj., <i>because.</i>
equester, equestris, equestre, <i>of the cavalry; cavalry (adj.).</i>	-que, and, <i>an enclitic, always attached to a word.</i>
	magnitūdō, inis, f., <i>greatness, size.</i>

159.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux filium ob virtūtem laudāverat. 2. Pāx quatuor mēnsibus ā Caesare cum multis cīvitatibus erat cōfirmāta. 3. Multā nocte cōpiae ex agrīs in castra convocābantur. 4. Mīlītēs hieme in hiberna sunt convocātī. 5. Multī incolae gladiis equitum vulnerātī erant.

II. 1. Why were the Helvetii aroused? 2. The town was captured on the march. 3. At daybreak the general gave his soldiers food. 4. The consul suffered from lack of cavalry.

160.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Castra Caesaris in Helvētiōrum fīnibus erant. 2. Iter per fīnēs nostrōs angustum erat. 3. Rōmānī virtūte sed nōn magnitūdine corporis Gallōs superābant. 4. Equestrēs cōpiae hostium magnā cum virtūte pugnāverant. 5. Flūmina Galliae erant angusta altaque.¹ 6. Equitēs ā Caesare sunt laudātī, quod hostēs celeritāte superāvērunt. 7. Acres perītaeque¹ erant cōpiae cōsulis. 8. Peditēs Caesaris proeliō erant ācrēs. 9. Cūr Helvētīi ā ducibus sunt incitātī? Quod altīs montibus et flūminibus lātīs continēbantur. 10. Hostēs equestrī proeliō erant superātī.

II. 1. The battle with our cavalry was keen. 2. Have you seen many deep rivers? 3. We surpass our neighbors in cavalry forces. 4. There is a narrow road through our neighbors' territory. 5. The general was wounded in his foot. 6. The Helvetii seized many towns because they fought with great bravery.

¹ Note to which word *-que* is added.



Galli

LESSON 24

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. TWO AND ONE TERMINATIONS. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

161. Many adjectives of the third declension have only two separate forms in the nominative, the masculine and feminine being alike. They are all declined like the following:

facilis, easy

Stem **facili-**

Base **facil-**

SINGULAR

Masculine and Feminine

NOM.	facilis
GEN.	facilis
DAT.	facilī
ACC.	facilem
ABL.	facilī

Neuter

facile
facilis
facilī
facile
facilī

PLURAL

NOM.	facilēs
GEN.	facilium
DAT.	facilibus
ACC.	facilis (ēs)
ABL.	facilibus

facilia
facilium
facilibus
facilia
facilibus

Other adjectives of this declension have one form for the nominative in all genders. They are declined like the following:

ferāx, *fertile*

Stem **ferāci-**

Base **ferāc-**

SINGULAR

Masculine and Feminine

NOM.	ferāx
GEN.	ferācis
DAT.	ferācī
ACC.	ferācem
ABL.	ferācī (e)

Neuter

ferāx
ferācis
ferācī
ferāx
ferācī (e)

PLURAL

NOM.	ferācēs
GEN.	ferācium
DAT.	ferācibus
ACC.	ferācīs (ēs)
ABL.	ferācibus

ferācia
ferācium
ferācibus
ferācia
ferācibus

Observe

1. That all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders in all cases except the nominative and accusative.
2. That adjectives of the third declension ending in **-er** have three terminations, those in **-is** two, and all others, except comparatives, one.
3. That they have **-i-** stems, and that those of two and three terminations have only **-ī** in the ablative singular.

162. Examine the following:

1. **Filius patrī similis erat**, *the son was like his father.*
2. **Locus castris idōneus erat**, *the place was suitable for a camp.*

Observe that the datives **patri** and **castris** are related to the adjectives **similis** and **idōneus**. This use of the dative is similar to the English idiom, and presents few difficulties.

163. Rule of Syntax. — *The dative is used with adjectives denoting Resemblance, Fitness, Nearness, and the like, and also with their opposites.*

164.

VOCABULARY

fortis , e, <i>brave, strong.</i>	omnis , e, <i>all, every, the whole.</i>
similis , e, <i>like, similar.</i>	brevis , e, <i>brief, short.</i>
dissimilis , e, <i>dissimilar, unlike.</i>	pār , paris , <i>equal (to).</i>
	vetus , ¹ veteris , <i>old, ancient.</i>
facilis , e, <i>easy.</i>	gēns , gentis , f., <i>race, nation.</i>
difficilis , e, <i>difficult.</i>	populus , i, m., <i>people.</i>

165.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Helvētiū flūminibus altīs continēbantur.* 2. *Ad flūmen iter erat angustum.* 3. *Cūr nostrī finitimī terrentur? Quod cum Rōmānis pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāvimus.* 4. *Caesar equestibus proeliis Gallōs superāvit.* 5. *Peditēs nostrī altīs flūminibus terrēbantur.* 6. *Gallōs magnā cum celeritāte in fugam dedērunt.*

II. 1. *There are many beautiful ships on the sea.* 2. *Our cavalry were skillful in battle.* 3. *Why were they frightened? Because they saw many deep rivers and lofty mountains.* 4. *The bridges have been taken possession of by the enemy.*

166.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Multae et fortēs erant in Galliā gentēs.* 2. *Caesar veterēs militēs amābat, quod bellō fortēs erant.* 3. *Militēs*

¹ This is not an i stem.

fortēs oppidum occupāverant. 4. Iter ad montem facile est. 5. Brevī tempore magnam hostium partem necāverant. 6. Helvētiī multitudīne hominum populō Rōmānō nōn erant parēs. 7. Fortis puer ā milite est vulnerātus. 8. Omnēs incolae ex oppidō ad collem convocantur. 9. Caesar multis imperātōribus erat dissimilis. 10. Fīnitimī nostrī omnēs gentēs virtūte superant.

II. 1. In every town we shall see many children. 2. The boy was like the girl in size. 3. We carried the grain into the town by an easy road. 4. All the tribes were brave and ¹ faithful. 5. In winter the field near the river will not be fit for a camp. 6. The Roman people were not conquered by the brave Helvetii.

LESSON 25

READING LESSON

CHAPTER II

THE AMBITIOUS DESIGNS OF THE HELVETII UNDER THE LEADERSHIP OF ORGETORIX

167. Orgetorix, quī² princeps erat Helvētiōrum, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcīt (*formed*) et cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāvit. Helvētiī undique nātūrā locī continentur; ūnā ex parte³ flūmine Rhēnō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit,⁴ alterā ex parte monte Iūrā, tertiā ex parte flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Quā dē causā⁵ finēs Helvētiōrum angustī erant prō⁶ multitudīne hominum, et ēmigrāre⁷ cupiēbant.⁸

¹ Use -que. ² the relative pronoun *who, which, that*. ³ ūnā ex parte, *on one side*. ⁴ third person singular of dīvidō. ⁵ Quā dē causā, *for this reason*. ⁶ in prōportion to. ⁷ to emigrate. ⁸ third person plural imperfect of cupiō.

LESSON 26

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF **sum**.
 REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

168. Review 81.

PRIN. PARTS : **sum, esse, fui**

PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
	SINGULAR	
1. fuī , <i>I have been,</i> <i>I was</i>	fueram , <i>I had been</i>	fuerō , <i>I shall have</i> <i>been</i>
2. fuistī	fuerās	fueris
3. fuit	fuerat	fuerit
	PLURAL	
1. fuimus	fuerāmus	fuerimus
2. fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis
3. fuērunt, fuēre	fuerant	fuerint

1. Observe that the perfect stem is **fu-**, and that the pluperfect and future perfect are formed regularly from this stem by adding **-eram** and **-erō**.
2. Are the personal endings regular ?

169. The following verbs of the first and second conjugations have been introduced in the preceding lessons. Review carefully their meanings and principal parts. Why must one know the principal parts of a verb ?

pugnō	conlocō	videō	laudō	superō	mātūrō
expugnō	cōfīrmō	teneō	culpō	armō	incitō
oppugnō	comparō	contineō	servō	occupō	labōrō
vocō	augeō	compleō	dēlectō	vulnerō	necō
convocō	habeō	moveō	dō	dīmicō	terreō
		moneō	portō		

1. What is the force of **con** (**com**) in a compound verb ?

170. Review carefully 99, 104, 105, 106. With the outline given below as a suggestion, complete the synopsis of **incitō**. In a similar way, write out a synopsis of **habeō** in the second person and **augeō** in the third person.

SYNOPSIS OF THE INDICATIVE, THIRD PERSON

PRIN. PARTS: **incitō, āre, āvi, ātus**, *arouse, urge on*

		ACTIVE	PASSIVE		
Present Stem incitā-	PRES.	<i>Sing.</i> incitat	incitātur	} Participial Stem incitāt-	
		<i>Plur.</i> incitant	incitantur		
	IMP.	<i>Sing.</i> incitābat	incitābātur		
		<i>Plur.</i> incitābant	incitābantur		
Perfect Stem incitāv-	FUT.	<i>Sing.</i>			
		<i>Plur.</i>			
	PERF.	<i>Sing.</i>			
		<i>Plur.</i>			
	PLUP.	<i>Sing.</i>			
		<i>Plur.</i>			
	FUT.	<i>Sing.</i>			
		<i>Plur.</i>			

171.

VOCABULARY

vāstō, āre, āvi, ātus, *lay waste, ravage.* **reliquus, a, um**, *the rest of, remaining.*

libertās, ātis, f., *liberty, freedom.* **potēns, potentis**, *able, powerful.*

prō, prep. with abl., *before, in behalf of, for.*

172.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Fuerātis; fuerimus; fuistis.** 2. **Gallōrum finēs ab equitibus erant vāstātī.** 3. **Reliquī hostēs prō libertāte diū pugnāverant.** 4. **Belgae nāvibus erant potentēs.**

5. Paucis annis bello finitimis Helvetiis superaverant.
 6. Pro feminis liberisque magno cum studio pugnabant.
 7. Reliquae in Gallia gentes a nostris finitimis incitatae sunt.
 8. Caesar cum quattuor legionibus finis Helvetiorum vastare¹ maturabit.
 9. Legionem populi Romani magnitudine corporis Gallorum terrebantur.
 10. Servus domino virtute erat similis.
 11. Angustis montibus et altis fluminibus oppidum continetur.

II. 1. They saw a few horsemen near the bridge.
 2. Because of the war, the fields of the Gauls have been laid waste.
 3. The legions of the Roman people were brave and skillful.
 4. The foot-soldiers were equal to the cavalry in speed.
 5. The citizens will fight for the general.
 6. They put the rest of the enemy to flight.
 7. There were many powerful tribes in Gaul.

LESSON 27

THIRD CONJUGATION. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

THIRD CONJUGATION

173. dūcō, *I lead*

PRIN. PARTS: dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of **dūcō** (493).

1. Observe that the personal endings are the same as those used in the first and second conjugations (43, 139).
2. Compare the present of **dūcō** with the present of **moneō** and **amō** in respect to the vowel that precedes the personal ending.

¹ pres. inf., *to lay waste*.

3. Are the imperfect tenses of the first, second, and third conjugations formed and conjugated in the same way?
4. Compare the future of **dūcō** with the future of **moneō**, and notice the difference in formation.
5. Observe that the present stems of this conjugation end in *short -e-*, those of the second conjugation in *long -ē-*.
6. Like **dūcō** conjugate the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active and passive, of **mittō**, *send*, and **vincō**, *conquer*.

174.

VOCABULARY

dūcō , ēre, dūxī , ductus , <i>lead</i> .	gerō , gerere , gessi , gestus ,
mittō , ere, mīsi , missus , <i>send</i> .	<i>carry on, wage.</i>
vincō , ere, vici , victus , <i>con-</i>	incolō , ere, incolui , incultus ,
<i>quer.</i>	<i>inhabit.</i>
relinquō , ere, reliquī , relictus ,	neque . . . neque , <i>neither</i> . . .
<i>leave behind, leave.</i>	<i>nor.</i>
contendō , ere, contendī , contentus , <i>struggle, strive, hasten,</i>	saepe , adv., <i>often, frequently.</i>
<i>hurry, march.</i>	

175.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux castra movēbit, quod inopia frūmentī in agrīs est. 2. Equitēs nostrī fābulis Gallōrum sunt incitātī. 3. Belgae virtūte Helvētiīs similēs erant. 4. Multae Gallōrum gentēs multitudīne hominū crant potentēs. 5. Paucī vicī ab hostibus vāstātī erant. 6. Omnēs prō libertāte magnō studiō pugnābimus.

II. 1. The rest of the Gauls were powerful in arms. 2. Is a son always like his father? 3. In a short time the village will be like a camp. 4. The general praised the old soldiers for their bravery.

176.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dūcunt; dūcent; dūcēbat. 2. Mittimus; mittēbantur; mittēbar. 3. Vincēmur; vincēs; dūcēbātis. 4. Belgae bellum longum cum populō Rōmānō gerēbant. 5. Helvētiī saepe cum finitimīs contendēbant. 6. Hostium cōpiae trāns flūmen relinquuntur. 7. In castris erant neque tēla neque cibus. 8. Helvētiī magnō proeliō ā Caesare vincuntur. 9. Imperātor per finēs Gallōrum in Belgās multās legiōnēs mittit. 10. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus in Galliam contendēbat. 11. Nāvēs in insulae incolās mittentur. 12. Gallī equestribus cōpiīs Rōmānōs superābant.

II. 1. We shall conquer; they are sending; you (plur.) are being led. 2. We are left behind; they will be sent; you (sing.) will be led. 3. He will neither send nor carry food into the city. 4. The Helvetii inhabit the mountains of Gaul. 5. Many women and children were left in camp. 6. The Roman people were waging war with the Helvetii. 7. Four legions will be sent by the consul into Gaul.

LESSON 28

VERBS IN -iō. THIRD CONJUGATION COMPLETED

177. Many verbs of the third conjugation end in *iō* in the first person singular of the present indicative active.

capiō, take

PRIN. PARTS: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus*

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of *capiō* (495).

1. Observe that the conjugation of *capiō* differs from that of *dūcō* in the present tense only in two forms. What is the difference?

2. In what respect do the imperfect and future of **capiō** differ from **dūcō**?
3. Like **capiō** conjugate these tenses of **fugiō**, *flee*, and **iaciō**, *hurl*.

178. Review 92, 98, 106, 152. *The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of all Latin verbs are formed and conjugated in the same way.*

1. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of **dūcō** and **capiō** (493, 495).
2. Write a synopsis (170) of **iaciō**, *hurl*, in the third person of the indicative.

179.

VOCABULARY

iaciō , <i>iacere</i> , iēcī , iactus , <i>throw, hurl.</i>	interficiō , <i>interficere</i> , interfēcī , <i>interfectus</i> , <i>kill.</i>
capiō , <i>capere</i> , cēpī , captus , <i>take, seize, capture, form.</i>	trādūcō (trāns + dūcō), <i>ere</i> , trādūxī , trāductus , <i>lead</i>
fugiō , <i>fugere</i> , fūgī , —, <i>flee</i> , <i>run away.</i>	<i>over, transport.</i>
faciō , <i>facere</i> , fēcī , factus , <i>do</i> , <i>make.</i>	cōnsilium , i , <i>n.</i> , <i>advice, pru-</i> <i>dence, plan.</i>
	moenia , moenium , <i>n.</i> (<i>plur.</i>), <i>walls, fortifications.</i>

180.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitēs peditēs nōn relinquent. 2. Neque pedibus neque equitibus sed nāvibus contendunt. 3. Estne iter ad oppidum facile? 4. Rōmānī in hostium finēs legiōnēs multās mittēbant. 5. Decem mēnsibus gentēs multae ā cōsule vincentur.

II. 1. The Helvetii often carried on war with their neighbors. 2. At daybreak the soldiers had been led

into the city. 3. The Gauls were conquered by Caesar.
4. Did you send the messenger to the general?

181.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capiuntur; interficiēris; fugiēmus. 2. Trādūci-
mur; capimur; fugiēbātis. 3. Caesar in Helvētiōrum
finēs iter¹ faciet. 4. Rōmānī ex hostibus copiam frūmentī
capiēbant. 5. Equitēs magnā cum celeritāte in montēs
fugiēbant. 6. Multā nocte paucī peditēs erant interfectī.
7. Hostēs tēla in moenia nostra iēcērunt. 8. Imperātor
ob cōsilium proelī lēgātum laudāvit. 9. Gallī lēgātōs ad
Caesarem dē pāce mīserunt. 10. Cōsul trāns flūmen
lātum legiōnēs trādūcet. 11. Multi equitēs ā cōpiīs
nostrīs interficientur.

II. 1. We shall flee; they were killed; it had been
taken. 2. You (plur.) were throwing; she has been
seized. 3. All the inhabitants fled from the city into
the forests. 4. The general's plan was a good one.²
5. The Helvetii will march³ out of their territory.
6. In the winter Caesar used⁴ to form his plans.

¹ iter faciō, march. ² was a good one = was good. ³ march = make a
march. ⁴ used to form: use the imperfect of faciō.



Caricature of Soldier
(Pompeii)

LESSON 29

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

182.

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION

PRESENT *amāre, to love* *amārī, to be loved*

SECOND CONJUGATION

PRESENT *monēre, to advise* *monērī, to be advised*

THIRD CONJUGATION

PRESENT *dūcere, to lead* *dūcī, to be led*PRESENT *capere, to take* *capī, to be taken*

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRESENT *audire, to hear* *audīrī, to be heard*

1. The present infinitive active of all verbs has appeared as the second one of the principal parts of each verb given (86).
2. Observe that the present passive is formed from the present active by changing final *-e* to *-ī*, except in the third conjugation, which changes final *-ere* to *-ī*.

183. Examine the following :

1. *Mātūrāt militēs convocāre, he hastens to summon the soldiers.*
2. *Laudārī est grātum, to be praised is pleasant.*
3. *Incolās armārī iubet, he orders the inhabitants to be armed.*
4. *Omnēs primī esse cupimus, we all wish to be first.*
5. *Dēbet interficī, he ought to be killed.*
6. *Fortis esse dīcitur, he is said to be brave.*

- a. These examples show that the infinitive in Latin is often used as it is in English.
- b. In 2, the infinitive is subject of **est**. In 1, 4, 5, 6, the infinitive completes the meaning of the main verb, and is called the *complementary infinitive*.
- c. In 3, observe that **incolās**, the subject of the infinitive, is accusative. In 4, note that the predicate adjective **prīmī** agrees with the subject of the main verb, **cupimus**, and is therefore nominative.

184. Rules of Syntax.

1. *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*
2. *A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

185.

VOCABULARY

dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus , <i>say, speak, tell.</i>	cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus , <i>place, station, determine, appoint.</i>
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus , <i>order, bid.</i>	parō, āre, āvī, ātus , <i>prepare, provide.</i>
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus , <i>owe, ought.</i>	appellō, āre, āvī, ātus , <i>call, name.</i>
cupiō, cupere, cupivī (īi), cupītus , <i>wish, desire, be eager for.</i>	auxilium, ī, n. , <i>aid, help.</i>
	numerus, ī, m. , <i>number.</i>

186.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Vir perītus esse dēbet. 2. Pater filiū fortem esse cupit. 3. Helvētiū lēgātōs dē pāce ad Caesarem mittere parātī sunt. 4. Difficile est gentēs potentēs superāre. 5. Helvētiī, inopiā cibī permōti (*influenced*), pācem facere cupiēbant. 6. Magnum nāvium numerum parāre Gallī cōstituērunt. 7. Caesar lēgātum auxilium mittere iussit.

8. Tuus amicus appellārī dīcitur. 9. Imperātor oppidum ex itinere oppugnāre cōstituerat. 10. Caesar cōstituit cum Helvētiīs, incolīs Galliae, bellum gerere. 11. Cōpiae hostium magnae esse dīcēbantur. 12. Cōsul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubēbit.

II. 1. It was easy to capture the town. 2. The enemy did not wish to leave their baggage in camp. 3. The girl ought to be skillful. 4. Do you wish to give your father a book? 5. Caesar ordered the legion to storm the town. 6. The fortifications are said to be high. 7. We ought to be brave and good. 8. Caesar desires the soldiers to be praised for their bravery. 9. The Gauls are said to be powerful in ships.

LESSON 30

READING LESSON

CHAPTER III

PREPARATION OF ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETII

187. Helvētīi auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī¹ iūmentōrum et carrōrum magnum numerum et cōpiam frūmentī comparāre cōstituērunt. In² tertium annum profectiōnem in prōvinciam Rōmānam lēge cōfirmāvērunt, et ad finitimās civitātēs Orgetorīgem lēgātum mīsērunt. Casticus Sēquanus, cuius (*whose*) pater ā populō Rōmānō amicus appellātus erat, et Dumnorīx Haeduus, principēs in suis (*their*) civitātibus, auxilium dedērunt. Dumnorīgī Orgetorīx filiam in mātirimōnium dedit. Itaque hī (*these*) trēs principēs potentium civitātum inter sē³ iūsiūrandum dedērunt, et Galliae imperium obtinēre cupiēbant.

¹ See 186 I, 5. ² *for*. ³ *inter sē*, each other (literally, among themselves).

LESSON 31

 THE DEMONSTRATIVE **is. idem**

 188. **Is, ea, id**

As adjective, *this, that* ; plur., *these, those*.

As pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it* ; plur., *these, those, they*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	cae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

1. In what cases do the endings differ from those of **bonus** (62)? The stem is **-e-** or **-i-**.

 189. **idem (is + dem), the same**

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	idem	éadem	idem
GEN.	eiusdem	ciusdem	eiusdem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
	PLURAL		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	eīdem (īdem)	eaedem	éadem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	éadem
ABL.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)

1. Observe that **idem** is a compound of **is** and **dem**, and that **dem** is uninflected.
2. The **is** is declined regularly except for a few consonant changes before **dem**.

190. Examine the following :

1. **Is miles laudātur**, *that soldier is praised*.
 2. **Eum laudant**, *they praise him (i.e. that (man))*.
 3. **Amicum eius laudāmus**, *we praise his friend (i.e. the friend of him)*.
 4. **Amicum eōrum laudāmus**, *we praise their friend (i.e. the friend of them)*.
- a. In 1, **is** is used in agreement with a noun, and is a demonstrative *adjective*. It tells in an unemphatic manner *what* man is praised.
 - b. In 2, 3, 4, **is** is used without a noun, and is a demonstrative *pronoun*.
 - c. Observe that **eius** means *his, hers, its*; **eōrum** means *their*, referring to masculine and neuter nouns; **eārum** means *their*, referring to feminine nouns. See table below for the various meanings of **is**.
 - d. Decline together: **ea fēmina, id nōmen, is miles**.
 - e. When the pronoun of the third person is expressed, it is regularly **is**.

191. TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

is, ea, id

SINGULAR

- | | |
|------|--|
| NOM. | this, that; he, she, it. |
| GEN. | of this, of that; of him, his; of her, her; of it, its. |
| DAT. | to <i>or</i> for this <i>or</i> that; to <i>or</i> for him, her, it. |
| ACC. | this, that; him, her, it. |
| ABL. | from, with, by this <i>or</i> that; from, with, by him, her, it. |

PLURAL

NOM. these, those; they.

GEN. of these, of those; of them, their.

DAT. to *or* for these *or* those; to *or* for them.

ACC. these, those; them.

ABL. from, with, by these *or* those; from, with, by them.

192.

VOCABULARY

Labiēnus, i, m., *Labiennus*
(one of Caesar's lieutenants).

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (one of the subdivisions of the legion).

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī,
dēfēnsus, *defend, protect.*

et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, good fortune.*

mūrus, i, m., *wall.*

pōnō, ponere, posuī, positus,
place, pitch (a camp).

prīnceps, principis, m., *leader, chief.*

pugna, ae, f., *battle.*

post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*

193.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Auxilium parāre dēbēmus. 2. Militēs fortēs esse cupiunt. 3. Caesarī obsidēs dare cōstituērunt. 4. Militēs cum virtūte pugnāre iūbēbit. 5. Numerus nāvium decem esse dīcitur. 6. Rōmānī eōs Gallōs appellāre cupiēbant.

II. 1. Caesar orders the states to send hostages. 2. The commander did not wish to fight. 3. A number of soldiers is said to be led to the city. 4. The Romans ought to conquer the Gauls.

194.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Eius; eārum; eī agricolae. 2. Eiusdem viri; eadem cohortēs; in eādē urbe. 3. Caesar, prīnceps Rōmānus, eam urbem expugnāverat. 4. Eius militēs post

eam pugnam cum ob fortūnam laudāvērunt. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar incolis libertātem dedit, quod mūrōs magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 6. Id facere est nōn semper facile. 7. Labiēnus eāsdem cohortēs in Helvētiōs dūxit et mox eōs vīcit. 8. In eōrum vīcō Labiēnus castra posuit, et paucīs mēnsibus pugnās multās pugnāvit. 9. Helvētīi mūrōs eius oppidī et cum virtūte et fortūna dēfendent. 10. Eōsdem militēs ad oppida eius gentis mittit.

II. 1. His; their (fem.); to them. 2. In the same winter; of the same chiefs; by the same man. 3. He orders them to pitch the camp in the same place. 4. His good fortune was not always the same. 5. They had given both money and food. 6. These soldiers will defend their walls.

LESSON 32

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

195. *quī, who, which, that, what*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

NOM.	who, which, that, what.
GEN.	of whom, whose, of which, of what.
DAT.	to <i>or</i> for whom, which, <i>or</i> what.
ACC.	whom, which, that, what.
ABL.	from, with, by whom, which, <i>or</i> what.

196. Examine the following :

1. **Fēminae quās vidēmus pulchrae sunt**, *the women whom we see are beautiful.*
2. **Virōs quī in castrīs sunt laudat**, *he praises the men that are in the camp.*
3. **Vir cuius equum habēbat agricola fuit**, *the man whose horse he had was a farmer.*
4. **Puella cui librum dedit fida est**, *the girl to whom he gave the book is faithful.*
5. **Pilum quō vulnerātus sum longum fuit**, *the javelin by which I was wounded was a long one.*
6. **Is quī est fortis laudātur**, *he (one, a man) who is brave is praised.*

- a. The relative pronoun refers to some word, and the word to which it refers is called its *antecedent*; *i.e.* the antecedent of **quās** in 1 is **fēminae**. Point out the antecedents in the other sentences.
- b. Observe that the relative has the same *gender* and *number* as its antecedent, but that *its case is not necessarily the same*. The case of the relative is determined by its relation to the words of its own clause: for example, in 1, **quās** is accusative because it is the direct object of **vidēmus**; in 5, **quō** is ablative to express the instrument of the verb **vulnerātus sum**. Explain the cases of the other relatives.
- c. In 6, **is** does not refer to any particular person, but means *a man, one*. **Is** is thus commonly used as the antecedent of the relative.

197. **Rule of Syntax.** — *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case is determined by its relation to some word of its own clause.*

198.

VOCABULARY

causa, ae, f., *cause, case.*

causam dicō, ere, dixī, dictus,

plead (one's) case.

vinculum, i, n., *chain.*

ex vinculis, *in chains.*

poena, ae, f., *punishment.*

coniūratiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*

nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus, *an-*
nounce, report.

coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum

(only in the perfect, plu-

perfect, and future perfect

tense), *began.*

Orgetorix, īgis, m., *Orgetorix.*

199.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōrum militēs in eōdem locō pugnābant. 2. Eīdem principī praemia dat. 3. Eae cohortēs moenia cum virtūte dēfendent. 4. Et Helvētīi et Rōmānī fortēs erant. 5. Eius castra in eādē urbe pōnuntur. 6. Post proelium militēs in hiberna contendunt.

II. 1. Those brave soldiers were praised for their good fortune. 2. Both the cohorts and their leaders had fought bravely in that battle. 3. Caesar at the same time defends the walls of that city. 4. After that war they pitched the camp near the mountains.

200.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī nūntiant causam coniūratiōnis quam Helvētīi fēcērunt. 2. Militēs quōs in Galliā habent in eam gentem mittuntur. 3. Orgetorix, quī eam coniūratiōnem fēcērat, ex vinculis causam dicere coepit. 4. Eius coniūratiō Caesarī nūntiāta est ab eīs quī missī erant. 5. Ob eam coniūratiōnem Helvētīi, quōrum lēgātī ā Caesare convocātī erant, permōtī sunt. 6. Causam ex vinculis dicere poena est eius quī coniūratiōnem fēcīt. 7. Causa bellī fuit caedēs Rōmānōrum quī in eā urbe fuērunt. 8. Cum eīs, quōrum principēs id fēcērant, pugnāre coepē-

runt. 9. Is cui bellum grātum est asper est. 10. Gladius quō pugnābat longus est.

II. 1. The boy that is faithful is praised. 2. The soldier whom the general sees is brave. 3. Those are the weapons with which he fought. 4. He who fights bravely is not often conquered. 5. Orgetorix, whose punishment has been announced, will be killed. 6. The man to whom I gave this is my friend. 7. They began to fight with the Romans.

LESSON 33

THE DEMONSTRATIVES **hic** AND **ille**. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES

201. **hic, haec, hoc, this, plur. these**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

202. **ille, illa, illud, that, plur. those**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

1. Compare the endings of **ille** with those of **is** (188).

203. Examine the following :

1. **Hic** puer omnia, illa puella pauca vidit, *this boy saw everything, that girl a few things.*
 2. **Caesar et Pompēius** erant Rōmānōrum principēs; ille in Galliā pugnābat, hic in Italiā remanēbat, *Caesar and Pompey were the leading men of the Romans; the former fought in Gaul, the latter remained in Italy.*
 3. **Nostri** in castris erant, *our men were in camp.*
- a. **Hic** and **ille** are more emphatic than **is** (190, a). When a contrast is expressed, as in 2, **hic** means *the latter*, **ille** means *the former*. **Ille** also sometimes means *that well-known, that famous*, and with this meaning is commonly placed after its noun.
- b. Decline together **haec urbs, hoc flūmen**.
- c. In 1 and 2, observe that the adjectives **omnia, pauca, nostri**, are used alone, as if they were nouns. The noun to be supplied in English is generally indicated by the gender of the adjective. The neuter implies the noun *thing* in English; *i.e.* **multa** (neuter plural) means *many things*.

204.

VOCABULARY

frāter, frātris, m., <i>brother.</i>	cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, <i>col-</i>
mors, mortis, f., <i>death.</i>	<i>lect, compel, force.</i>
cliēns, clientis, m., <i>vassal,</i>	ēripiō, ere, ēripiū, ēreptus,
<i>dependent.</i>	<i>snatch away, save.</i>
nātiō, ōnis, f., <i>nation.</i>	sub, prep. with acc., <i>to the</i>
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., <i>speech.</i>	<i>foot of; with abl., under,</i>
cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgni-	<i>at the foot of.</i>
tus, <i>learn of, recognize.</i>	

205.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiī quī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Lēgātī quibus Caesar ea dīxit permōtī erant. 3. Causa eius poenae erat coniūrātiō quam fēcērat. 4. Orgetorīx, cuius cōnsilia nūntiāta sunt, interficiētur. 5. Magnā cum virtūte pugnābant, quod hostēs ad castra erant. 6. Pugna quam cum Gallīs pugnāverant longa erat.

II. 1. The chief that you see is Orgetorix. 2. The mountain on which they fought is in Gaul. 3. Those to whom he gives money are his friends. 4. The man whose conspiracy was reported began to speak.

206.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Huius ōrātiōnis; illōrum clientium; huic amīcō. 2. Hīc cliēns frātre[m] eius ēripiet. 3. Nostrī hac ōrātiōne permōtī (*aroused*) hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 4. Hae civitātēs, quās dīximus,¹ lēgātōs ad illum ducem mittent. 5. Et peditēs et equitēs ad Caesarem contendunt, illī ex urbe, hī ex agrīs. 6. Orgetorīx, prīnceps ille Helvētiōrum, necātus est. 7. Mors huius prīncipis Helvētiīs nōn grāta est. 8. Illī quōs convocāvistī clientēs meī frātrī sunt. 9. Omnēs cōgnōscere amīcōs cupiunt. 10. Sub illō colle Caesar hostēs castra pōnere coēgit.

II. 1. For this man; of those towns; that famous commander. 2. At the foot of this mountain the enemy will force Caesar to fight. 3. All these tribes Caesar conquered within that winter. 4. It is difficult to compel him to do many things. 5. Our men collected the baggage into that place. 6. The Romans fought with the Helvetians; the latter were brave, but they were conquered by the former.

¹ mention.

LESSON 34

Ipse. Iste. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

207.

ipse, self

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

1. Observe that **ipse** is declined like **bonus**, except in the genitive and dative singular, where we have the endings **-īus** and **-ī**. What other words have had these genitive and dative endings?
2. **Ipse** is a pronoun that gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its translations vary: for example, **vir ipse**, *the man himself*; **fēmina ipsa**, *the woman herself*; **proelium ipsum**, *the battle itself*; **urbēs ipsae**, *the cities themselves*; etc. It sometimes is best translated in English by *even* or *very*. It agrees like an adjective with some noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

208. Like **ille** (202) decline **iste**, *that, that of yours*.

1. **Iste** points out an object near a second person, and may be translated fully *that of yours*. It is, therefore, called the demonstrative of the second person. **Ille** is called the demonstrative of the third person, and its complete meaning is *that (of his or hers)*. **Hic**

is the demonstrative of the first person and signifies *this (of mine)*.

2. Mention the pronouns that have **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular.

209. The following adjectives end in **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of **alter** ends in **-ius**). In all other cases they are declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

alius, alia, aliud (480), *other, another.*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other (of two).*
uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two)?*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both.*
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of two).*
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any.*
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, *no, none, no one.*
sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone, sole, only.*
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole, all.*
ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one.*

210. Examine the following :

1. **Nostris finibus eōs prohibēbat**, *he kept them from our territories.*
2. **Cibō caruerat**, *he had lacked food.*
3. **Ex eā parte vicī discessit**, *he withdrew from that part of the village.*
- a. Observe that the ablatives **finibus**, **cibō**, and **parte** denote the thing from which there is privation or removal, or the thing which is lacking.

211. Rule of Syntax. — *Words denoting Privation, Removal, or Separation are followed by the ablative of the thing, with or without the prepositions ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

212.

VOCABULARY

careō, ēre, carui, caritūrus, ¹ <i>lack, be in need of, be with-</i> <i>out.</i>	rīpa, ae, f., <i>bank</i> (of river). alter . . . alter, <i>the one . . .</i> <i>the other</i> (of two).
discēdō, ere, discessi, disces- sum, <i>depart, withdraw.</i>	alius . . . alius, <i>one . . .</i> <i>another.</i>
liberō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>free</i> <i>from, liberate.</i>	alii . . . alii, <i>some . . . others.</i>
prohibeō, ēre, prohibui, pro- hibitus, <i>keep away from.</i>	alii aliam in partem, <i>some</i> <i>in one direction, some in</i> <i>another.</i>
prōvincia, ae, f., <i>province.</i>	

213.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Clientēs hōs militēs pugnāre cōgunt. 2. Helvētīi in illis castris ē periculō sunt ērepti. 3. Frātrēs Orgetorigis principis illius eum cōgnōscunt. 4. Sub illō monte hae nātiōnēs castra posuerunt. 5. Huic militi arma pīlum et sagittās dederant. 6. Rēx hārum nātiōnum, quae illam coniūrātiōnem fēcerant, necātus est.

II. 1. That famous chief was forced to plead his case in chains. 2. Those tribes collected the soldiers at the foot of the hill (acc.). 3. That man, whose daughter has been saved, will praise the soldier for² his courage. 4. We do not like to be compelled.

214.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hīc liber est meus; ille gladius est militis³; ubi est istud pīlum? 2. Caesar ipse cum militibus ex illā urbe discēdit. 3. Lēgātī quōs Helvētīi mīserunt armīs carent. 4. Hostēs utrīque rīpīs flūminis prohibēbimus. 5. Ipsī

¹ Future active participle. This is sometimes given as the fourth principal part when the perfect passive participle is lacking. ² ob, with acc. ³ the soldier's.

oppidum ā militibus¹ liberāvistis. 6. Alii in ripis alii in flumine ipsō pugnābant. 7. Caesar sōlus Helvētiōs prōvinciā prohibet. 8. Tōta prōvincia āb hostibus liberāta est. 9. Ex hāc urbe incolae alii aliam in partem discēdent. 10. Caesar et Orgetorix prīncipēs fuērunt; alter necātus (est), alter ob victōriam laudātus est.

II. 1. Of the queen herself; on the very banks of the river; that daughter of yours. 2. Caesar was the very man who was keeping the enemy from the province. 3. Some depart from the town in one direction, some in another. 4. Those soldiers of yours lack bravery and will withdraw from the battle. 5. Some like war, others peace. 6. I myself shall free the inhabitants of the whole province from danger.

LESSON 35

FOURTH CONJUGATION. INTERROGATIVE **quis**

215. **audiō, hear**

PRIN. PARTS: **audiō, audire, audivi, auditus**

Learn all tenses of the indicative, active and passive, of **audiō** (494).

1. Observe that the final vowel of the present stem is *long -ī-*. What are the corresponding vowels of the first, second, and third conjugations? How can one tell to what conjugation a verb belongs?
2. Compare carefully the present indicative active and passive of **audiō** with the corresponding forms of **capiō** (495). In what forms is there a difference? Note

¹ A preposition is regularly used with verbs of separation when the ablative denotes a person.

particularly the *quantity* of the vowel **i** in the present tense of **audiō**, and how this affects the pronunciation.

3. The other five tenses of **audiō** are formed and conjugated exactly like those of **capīō**.

216.

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

quis, *who?* *which?* *what?*

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. Compare these forms with those of the relative (195).

217. Examine the following:

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Quis hoc fēcit? <i>who did this?</i> | } Used as an interrogative pronoun. |
| 2. Quid fēcisti? <i>what did you do?</i> | |
| 3. Quī (quis) vir hoc fēcit? <i>what man did this?</i> | |
| 4. Quam urbem vidēs? <i>what city do you see?</i> | } Used as an interrogative adjective. |
| 5. Quod dōnum amat puer? <i>what gift does the boy like?</i> | |

- a.* Observe that, when used as an *adjective*, the interrogative has the same forms as the relative. **Quis** is sometimes used for **quī**.
- b.* When used as a pronoun, **quis** and **quid** are used in place of **quī** and **quod**. As a pronoun it has no feminine forms in the singular.

218.

VOCABULARY

audiō, īre, audivī, audītus, <i>hear.</i>	cōsuētūdō, inis, f., <i>custom,</i> <i>habit.</i>
mūniō, īre, mūnivī, mūnītus, <i>fortify.</i>	clāmor, ōris, m., <i>shout, cry.</i> labor, ōris, m., <i>work, labor.</i>
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum,¹ <i>come.</i>	iūdicium, ī, n., <i>trial, judgment.</i>
pūniō, īre, pūnivī, pūnītus, <i>punish.</i>	undique, adv., <i>from all sides.</i>

219.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ipse urbem periculō liberābit. 2. Iste mīles, cuius virtūtem omnēs vidētis, Rōmānus est. 3. In hōc ipsō oppidō coniūrātiō est facta. 4. Helvētiī ē tōtā prōvinciā discessērunt. 5. Hostēs aliī aliam in partem in fugam dabuntur. 6. Alter lēgātus hostēs moenibus prohibēre, alter incolās convocāre coepit.

II. 1. Some will be freed from chains, but others will be punished. 2. The enemy will be kept away from the city. 3. They fought for a long time on the very banks of the river. 4. I myself shall depart from the city.

220.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Audīris; audiētur; venerātis. 2. Mūniēbātur; pūnivisti; pūnitae erātis. 3. Quī venient in hanc urbem?

¹ The neuter singular of the perfect passive participle. Other forms of the participle are not used.

4. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur? Clāmōrēs ipsōrum quōs mīsimus audiuntur. 5. Cōsuētūdō est Rōmānōrum castra nocte mūnīre. 6. Quīs telis vulnerātus est? Miles cuius imperātor castra nōn mūnīvit. 7. Quōs clāmōrēs in hāc urbe audīmus? 8. Et clientēs et servōs ad iūdicium undique coēgit. 9. Clāmōrēs eōrum quī cum impedīmentis veniēbant auditī sunt. 10. Quid facere cupitis? Castra pōnere sub monte illō cupimus.

II. 1. We are heard; you (plur.) will hear; we had come. 2. They have been punished; you (sing.) are being heard; the camp has been fortified. 3. What did he do? 4. Who formed a conspiracy of the Helvetians? 5. Orgetorix himself was the one¹ who formed the conspiracy. 6. Whose weapons are these? 7. With great labor they will fortify the city that² we have taken.

LESSON 36

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IV

THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX AFTER BEING SUMMONED TO TRIAL BY THE HELVETIAN OFFICIALS ON A CHARGE OF CONSPIRACY

221. Ea cōsilia sunt Helvētiis per nūntiōs nūntiāta, et Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Coniūrātiōnis accūsātus est et ignī cremārī³ eius poena fuit. Quam⁴ ob rem Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam (*his*) familiam et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, undique coēgit. Per eōs sē (*himself*)

¹ See 196, 6.

² Is this a relative or a demonstrative?

³ See 183, 2.

⁴ *quam ob rem, therefore, wherefore.*

ē periculō ēripuit. Magistrātūs¹ ob eius fugam sunt incitātī multitudinemque hominum cōgere ex agrīs coepērunt. Intereā Orgetorix mortuus² est, et dē eius morte fuērunt multī rūmōrēs apud Helvētiōs.

LESSON 37

FOURTH DECLENSION

222.

THE STEM ENDS IN -u-

cāsus, m.,
chance, misfortune

Stem **cāsu-**
Base **cās-**

cornū, n.,
horn, wing

Stem **cornu-**
Base **corn-**

	SINGULAR	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS SINGULAR	
			<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
GEN.	cāsūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
DAT.	cāsui (ū)	cornū	-ui (ū)	-ū
ACC.	cāsum	cornū	-um	-ū
ABL.	cāsū	cornū	-ū	-ū
	PLURAL	PLURAL	PLURAL	
NOM.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
GEN.	cāsuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
DAT.	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
ABL.	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

1. A few words of this declension have **-ubus** in the dative and ablative plural.
2. **Domus**, f., *house, home*, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension. (See 476.)

¹ *officers, magistrates*, nom. plur. ² *mortuus est*, *died*.

223. **Rule of Syntax.** — *Nouns of the fourth declension in -us are masculine ; those in -ū are neuter.*

1. **Domus**, *house*, **Īdūs** (plur.), *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few other nouns are *feminine*.

224. Decline together **exercitus fortis**, *brave army* ; **tua manus**, *your hand* ; **cornū dextrum**, *right wing*.

225.

VOCABULARY

cāsus, ūs, m., *a falling, chance, misfortune.* **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing.*

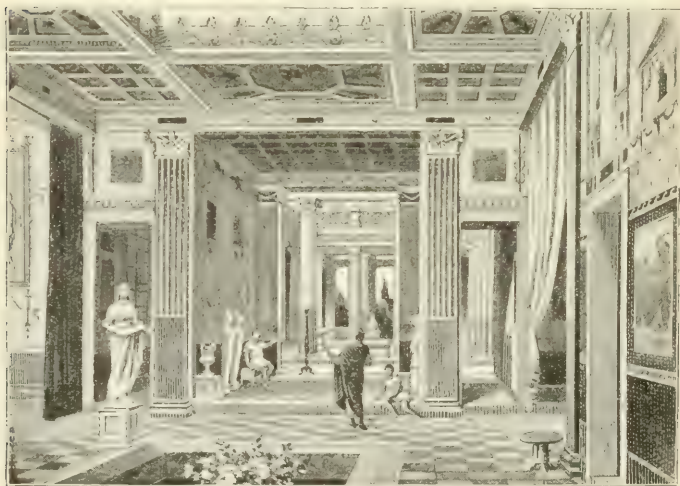
domus, ūs, f., *house, home.* **ā sinistrō cornū**, *on the left wing.*

exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*

manus, ūs, f., *hand, band (of men).* **conveniō**, ire, **convēni**, **conventus**, *come together, assemble.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*

cornū, ūs, n., *horn, wing (of army).* **deus**, ī, m., *god.*



Interior of a Roman House (Restoration)

226.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis clāmōrēs mīlitum audīvit? 2. Hostēs alii aliam in partem fugient. 3. Undique equitēs ex silvīs ad flūmen veniēbant. 4. Prīncipis est cōsuētūdō pūnīre eōs quī coniūrātiōnem faciunt. 5. Quam urbem mūnient et quī eam dēfendent? 6. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur atque cūr illī pūnītī sunt?

II. 1. Who will fortify the camp that¹ Caesar has pitched? 2. We shall keep those foot-soldiers from the city. 3. Whose shouts did you hear at daybreak at the foot of the hill? 4. In many countries lazy men are punished by labor.

227.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Portubus; exercitui; manuum. 2. Manūs equitum ad exercitum vēnerant. 3. Ad hunc portum nāvēs hostium missae sunt. 4. Quī mīlītēs ā dextrō cornū exercitūs sunt? 5. Rōmānī cōsiliō deōrum magnam Helvētiōrum partem necāvērunt. 6. Nūntiī quī ad Caesarem vēnerant eī cāsum exercitūs nūntiāvērunt. 7. Paucī ad portās urbis conveniēbant. 8. Rōmānī magnā cum caede domōs et agrōs Gallōrum vāstāverant. 9. Nostrī ā sinistrō cornū superātī sunt quod nōn cum virtūte dīmīcāverant. 10. Domūs Gallōrum ab equitibus vāstābantur. 11. Urbs cuius portās dēfendimus magnum portum habet.

II. 1. For the gods; on the left wing; the doors of the houses. 2. In the harbor are many ships in which² the army of the Romans came from the city to Gaul. 3. The misfortune of the army was reported to Caesar. 4. Orgetorix, whose bands had assembled, was not saved from danger. 5. The houses of the city will be defended by the army.

¹ Is this the relative or the demonstrative pronoun? ² *in which*: express by the ablative of means.

LESSON 38

IRREGULAR VERB **eō**. PLACE WHERE, WHENCE, AND WHITHER228. IRREGULAR VERB **eō**, *go*PRIN. PARTS : **eō**, **īre**, **īi**, **itum**¹Learn all tenses of the indicative of **eō** (500).

1. Notice that the **-i-**, the present stem of **eō**, changes to **-e-** before a vowel. In what forms of the present indicative does this change occur?
2. Observe that the future indicative **ībō** is formed like the future of verbs of the first and second conjugations, although the present infinitive is **īre**. Are all other tenses of the indicative formed and conjugated regularly?

229. Names of towns and a few other words have a special case called the *Locative*, which expresses the idea of *at* or *in*, and answers the question *where*.

1. The following are the *locative* endings for names of towns :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
First Declension	-ae	-īs	{ Romae , <i>in Rome</i> . Athēnīs , <i>in Athens</i> .
Second Declension	-ī	-īs	{ Corinthī , <i>at or in Corinth</i> . Delphīs , <i>at or in Delphi</i> .
Third Declension	-ī(e)	-ibus	{ Carthāginī , <i>at or in Carthage</i> . Trallibus , <i>at or in Tralles</i> .

¹ See note on **veniō** (218).

2. **Domī**, at home ; **humī**, on the ground ; **rūrī**, in the country, are also locative forms.
3. To express the same idea for other words than the names of towns use the preposition **in** and the ablative ; *i.e.* **in urbe est**, he is in the city ; **in Ītaliā sunt**, they are in Italy.

230. Examine the following :

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| 1. Venit , he comes | { | ad pontem, to the bridge.
in Ītaliā, to or into Italy.
Rōmam, to Rome.
domum, home.
rūs, to or into the country. |
| 2. Exit , he goes | { | (ab) (dē) ex oppidō, from the town.
(ab) (dē) ex Ītaliā, from Italy.
Athēnīs, from Athens.
domō, from home.
rūre, from the country. |

- a. Observe that to answer the questions *whither* or *whence*, no *preposition* is used with names of towns and **domus** and **rūs**, while a preposition (**in**, **ad**, **ab**, **dē**, **ex**) is used with other words.

231. Rule of Syntax.

With names of towns and domus and rūs.

1. Place *where* is expressed by the locative.
2. Place *whither* is expressed by the accusative *without a preposition*.
3. Place *whence* is expressed by the ablative *without a preposition*.

A preposition is used with other words to express these ideas.

232.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, ārum (plur.), f., <i>Athens.</i>	eō, ire, ii, itum, <i>go.</i>
Carthāgō, inis, f., <i>Carthage.</i>	exeō (ex + eō), ire, exii, ex- itūrus, ¹ <i>go out.</i>
Corinthus, i, f. (27, 2), <i>Cor- inth.</i>	trānseō (trāns + eō), ire, trānsii, trānsitūrus, ¹ <i>go over, go across, cross.</i>
Delphī, ōrum (plur.), f., <i>Del- phi.</i>	impetus, ūs, m., <i>attack.</i>
equitātus (eques), ūs, m., <i>cav- alry.</i>	impetum faciō in (with acc.), <i>make an attack upon.</i>

233.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Domūs incolārum ab equitātū Caesaris dēfenduntur.
2. Legiōnēs populī Rōmānī in hiberna vēnerant. 3. Cāsus
nāvium militibus, quī in hibernis erant, nūntiātus est. 4. In
sinistrō cornū exercitūs sunt manūs multae fortium militum.
5. Cāsū nostrōrum hostēs erant laetī.

II. 1. The Gauls were being conquered on the right
wing. 2. The bands of the enemy that you see are as-
sembling from all sides. 3. They were hastening to the
harbor from which the ships of our (men) were seen.
4. They were killed by the cavalry with swords.

234.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ierat; ibunt; eunt. 2. Trānsiērunt; exhibātis;
imus; iimus. 3. Ex urbe; ex urbe Rōmā²; Rōmā; domō.
4. In oppidō; Rōmae; Carthāginī; Athēnīs; domī. 5. Cōn-
sul exercitum Rōmā Athēnās trādūxit. 6. Caesar lēgātōs
quōs habēbat in Graeciam trānsire iussit. 7. Dux Rō-
mānōrum urbem mūniet atque incolās ab hostibus liberābit.

¹ See note on careō (212). ² of Rome. Rōmā is in apposition with urbe.

8. Equitātum Corinthum mittet, sed ipse Athēnīs bellum geret. 9. Helvētīi ē fīnibus exire parant, et exercitum trāns flūmen trādūcunt. 10. Caesar Rōmā contendit et equitātum in Helvētiōs impetum facere iubet.

II. 1. From Greece ; out of Corinth ; from home. 2. To Athens ; to the city ; into the country ; into the province. 3. In Rome ; in Italy ; at home ; at Delphi. 4. We ought to send the cavalry to Athens. 5. The enemy had made a brave attack on our men, but had been conquered. 6. The cavalry wished to cross the river, but were kept away from the banks by the enemy.

LESSON 39

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

235. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Review the list of verbs in 169, and review thoroughly the meanings and principal parts of the following verbs that have been introduced since Lesson 27 :

dūcō	capiō	incolō	coepī
trādūcō	prohibeō	iaciō	nūntiō
eō	audiō	fugiō	ēripiō
trānseō	parō	faciō	cōgō
exeō	pōnō	interficiō	cōgnōscō
veniō	careō	dīcō	discēdō
conveniō	vincō	iubeō	liberō
mittō	relinquō	appellō	pūniō
dēbeō	contendō	cōstituō	mūniō
cupiō	gerō	dēfendō	

1. Notice particularly the significance of the prefixes **trāns**, **ex**, **con**, as they appear in the compound verbs.
2. How does the formation of the future of the first and second conjugations differ from that of the third and fourth conjugations?
3. How can you tell whether **cupiō** belongs to the fourth or the third conjugation?

236. 1. Following the form suggested in 170, write a synopsis of **iubeō** in the first person, **interficiō** in the second person, **mūniō** in the third person.

2. Review 92, 1. Conjugate the perfect active of **dō**, **iubeō**, **eō**, **cōgnōscō**, **veniō**. Observe that the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active and passive of *all conjugations* are formed from the principal parts and conjugated in the same way.

237. Examine the following:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Miles gladium habet, | } <i>the soldier has a sword.</i> |
| 2. Militi est gladius, | |

Observe the two ways in Latin of expressing the same English idea. The first sentence corresponds word for word with the English translation. The second sentence, translated into bad English, is "for the soldier is a sword," the possessor being dative and the thing possessed being subject of **est**. Never translate literally a Latin sentence thus, as there is in good English no similar construction.

238. Rule of Syntax. — *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

239.

REVIEW EXERCISES

(Give tense, voice, person, and number, and translate.)

I. 1. Facient; convocābāmur; cōgēminī. 2. Audiēbāris; pūnīris; caperis. 3. Discesserit; prohibuerant; convēnistis. 4. Missum erat; mīserat; coepistī. 5. Pōnētis; capiēs; appellābitis. 6. Vincentur; pūniētur; iubētur. 7. Reliquerātis; relinquent; dictum erat. 8. Līberātae sunt; habuerās; contendēbātis. 9. Ēripiēris; trādūcētur; mōnentur. 10. Augēbat; pugnābunt; dēfēnsa erat; exit; exiit.

II. 1. We have said; they wished; you (plur.) have been compelled. 2. We shall take; you will leave; they will blame. 3. It has been said; you (fem. plur.) have been defended. 4. It was heard; we are being defended; you (sing.) are fortifying. 5. We shall cross; they have gone; you were going out. 6. It had been sent; you (plur.) have sent.

240.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Meus amīcus domum habet. 2. Meō amīcō est domus. 3. Helvētiī, quōrum castra vidētis, in Caesarem impetum mox facient. 4. Exercitus magnus fuit Caesarī. 5. Caesar magnum exercitum habuit. 6. Magnam frūmentī cōpiam habent. 7. Eīs est magna frūmentī cōpia. 8. Hostēs paucās nāvēs habent. 9. Hostibus sunt paucae nāvēs. 10. Militī pulchrum scūtum dedit.

II. 1. The farmer has¹ a horse. 2. They have¹ friends. 3. The soldiers have come to Rome. 4. He had¹ a book. 5. Who will go to the city? 6. The city that the Romans fortified was large and beautiful.

¹ Express this idea in two ways in Latin.

LESSON 40

NUMERALS. EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE

241. Learn thoroughly the cardinals as far as twenty (485), and study the formation of the numbers beyond.

242. DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

Paradigms

	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ūnus, <i>one</i>	ūna	ūnum	trēs, <i>three</i>	tria
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	trium	trium
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, trīs	tria
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	duo, <i>two</i>	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	mille, <i>thousand</i>	millia (mīlia)
GEN.	mille	millium (mīlium)
DAT.	mille	millibus (mīlibus)
ACC.	mille	millia (mīlia)
ABL.	mille	millibus (mīlibus)

243. 1. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable: **quattuor puellae**, *four girls*; **septem puerorum**, *of seven boys*.

2. Compare the declension of **ūnus** with that of **ille** (202).

3. **Mille** in the singular is indeclinable, and is generally used as an adjective: **mille militēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. In the plural it is a noun only: **septem millia militum**, *seven thousand (of) soldiers*.

244. Examine the following:

1. **Hannibal multōs annōs in Ītaliā manēbat**, *Hannibal remained (for) many years in Italy*.
2. **Hoc flūmen altum quīnque pedēs est**, *this river is five feet deep*.
- a. Observe that the accusative **multōs annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*; **quīnque pedēs**, extent of *space*.

245. **Rule of Syntax.** — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

246.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō , altitūdinis , f., <i>height, depth</i> .	mercātor , ōris , m., <i>merchant, trader</i> .
ēruptiō , ōnis , f., <i>a breaking out, a sally</i> .	socius , i , m., <i>companion, ally</i> .
incendō , ere , incendī , incēnsus , <i>set fire to, burn</i> .	passus , ūs , m., <i>pace</i> .
maneō , ēre , mānsī , mānsūrus , <i>stay, remain</i> .	mille passuum , <i>a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile</i> .
	hōra , ae , f., <i>hour</i> .

247.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Centum vīgintī mercātorum**; **mille trecentīs sex et quadrāgintā militibus**. 2. **Trium exercituum**; **duābus legiōnibus**; **quattuor equorum**. 3. **Mūrus quem vidēs altus est sex pedēs**. 4. **Duōs mēnsēs ēruptiōnem facere parābant**. 5. **Caesar novem annōs in Galliā manēbat**. 6. **Equitēs duās horās magnā cum virtūte pugnābant**. 7. **Socii**

Helvētiōrum decem mīllia passuum per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter fēcērunt. 8. Lēgātus cum tribus cohortibus vicōs duodecim incendit et agrōs vāstāvit. 9. Tria mīllia militum ad flūmen ab hostibus interfectī erant. 10. Id flūmen centum pedēs lātum et duodēvīgintī altum fuit. 11. Hīc collis septuāgintā quīnque pedēs est in altitūdine. 12. Equitātus Athēnīs Delphōs exiit.

II. 1. Thirty-seven villages; five thousand soldiers; a thousand horsemen. 2. For two months the soldiers of the Roman people besieged that town. 3. The wall, which was twelve feet in height, was defended by Caesar's forces. 4. He remained eight months in that country, and then hastened to Rome. 5. The river that they crossed was nineteen feet deep. 6. The soldiers remained in Carthage, but the consul came to Rome.

LESSON 41

FIFTH DECLENSION. PARTITIVE GENITIVE

248.

FIFTH DECLENSION

The stem ends in *-ē-*

diēs, m., day

rēs, f., thing

Stem *diē-*

Stem *rē-*

Base *di-*

Base *r-*

TERMINATIONS

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
GEN.	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>-ēī</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
DAT.	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēī</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
ACC.	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-em</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
ABL.	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ē</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

1. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that have all the forms of the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and accusative plural.

249. **Rule of Syntax.** — *All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, which is usually masculine in the singular and always so in the plural.*

250. Examine the following :

1. **Satis cibī habēmus**, *we have enough (of) food.*
 2. **Nihil novī est**, *there is nothing (of) new.*
 3. **Ūnus ex militibus vulnerātus est**, *one of the soldiers was wounded.*
 4. **Quīdam dē nostrīs cecidērunt**, *some of our men fell.*
- a. Observe that the genitives **cibī**, **novī**, denote the whole of which a part (**satis**, **nihil**) is taken. Note that in 1 and 2 the preposition *of* is not used in English.
- b. Observe the construction following **ūnus** and **quīdam** in 3 and 4. After the cardinal numerals regularly, and after a few other words occasionally, an ablative with **dē** or **ex** is used in place of the genitive.

251. **Rule of Syntax.** — *The partitive genitive is used to denote a whole of which a part is taken.*

252.

VOCABULARY

aciēs , ēī , f., <i>line of battle.</i>	pūblicus , a, um, <i>public.</i>
diēs , ēī , m., <i>day.</i>	rēs pūblica , reī pūblīcae , f., <i>the state, the republic.</i>
rēs , reī , f., <i>thing, circumstance, affair.</i>	nihil (indecl. noun), <i>nothing.</i>
cōficiō , ere, cōfēcī , cōfectus , <i>accomplish, finish, wear out.</i>	satis (indecl. noun), <i>enough.</i>
	nihil reliquī , <i>nothing left.</i>

253.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Exercitus decem mēnsēs Rōmae manēbat. 2. Via vīgintī millia passuum est longa. 3. Pompēius et Caesar cōsulēs fuērunt; ille Rōmae manēbat, hīc cum exercitū in Galliam vēnit. 4. Helvētīi cum omnibus impedimentīs domum ire coāctī sunt. 5. Equitātus quīndecim hōris Athēnīs Corinthum iit.

II. 1. The city was on a hill a hundred feet high. 2. The allies marched¹ seven miles in two hours. 3. Late at night the general set fire to all the buildings. 4. Behind the camp was a river four feet deep.

254.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar exercitum flūmen ūnō diē trādūxerat. 2. Haec rēs multōs hostēs terruit, atque pars eōrum domum iit. 3. Trēs diēs equitātus cum Helvētīis, quī flūmen trānsībant, pugnābat. 4. Vicōs et aedificia incend-erant, et nihil reliquī domī habēbant. 5. Prīmā lūce paucī dē eōrum militibus iter nōn cōnfēcērant. 6. Fīnitimī eis satis frūmentī et cibī dedērunt. 7. Rēs pūblica tribus diē-bus magnō periculō liberāta est. 8. Quattuor ē lēgātis eō diē eandem rem Caesarī nūntiāvērunt. 9. Omnibus rēbus Rōmānī Helvētīos, quī domō exierant, superābant. 10. Prīmam aciem iacere tēla iussit.

II. 1. For twenty days the legions defended the camp from the enemy. 2. The Gauls have enough soldiers, but they lack courage. 3. The Helvetians have² nothing left, and will soon go out of their territories. 4. Few of our men will remain in Rome. 5. In a few days we shall have enough weapons.

¹ iter faciō.
habent.

² Express this idea in some other way than by using

LESSON 42

READING LESSON

(Those who prefer reading lessons based on Caesar's *Gallie War*, Book II, may use the lessons beginning at 451.)

CHAPTER V

THE HELVETII NEVERTHELESS COMPLETE THEIR PREPARATIONS

255. Post eius mortem nihilo minus Helvētīi ē finibus suis¹ exīre cōstituērunt. Ubi iam ad eam rem parātī sunt, oppida sua¹ omnia ad² duodecim, vicōs ad² quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt.³ Itaque et domum reditiōnis spem sustulērunt⁴ et ad bellum parātī sunt. Frūmentum et multa alia quemque domō efferre iubent.³ Rauracī et Tulingī et Latobrigī finitimī idem facere et ē finibus exīre cōstituunt.³ Bōiī, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēciamque oppugnāverant, Helvētiōrum amīcī et sociī erant.

LESSON 43

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

256. The degrees of comparison are: *positive, comparative, superlative*.

1. The positive is the simple form of the adjective: **cārus**, *dear*.

¹ *their*. ² *about* (with numerals). ³ The present tense is sometimes used instead of a past tense to express the thought with greater vividness. It is called the historical present. ⁴ From **tollō**.

2. The comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter: **cārus** (base **cār-**), *dear*, **cārior**, **cārius**, *dearer*.
3. The superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum**: **cārus** (base **cār-**), *dear*, **cāriissimus**, **a**, **um**, *dearest*.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
lātus (lāt-), <i>wide</i>	lātior ,	lātius ,	lātissimus , a , um , <i>widest</i>
fortis (fort-), <i>brave</i>	fortior ,	fortius ,	fortissimus , a , um , <i>bravest</i>
vēlōx (vēlōc-), <i>swift</i>	vēlōcior ,	vēlōcius ,	vēlōcissimus , a , um , <i>swiftest</i>

257. The superlative is declined like **bonus** (62). The comparative is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
NOM.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs (īs)	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre (ī)	lātiōre (ī)	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

1. In what forms does the declension of the comparative differ from that of regular third declension adjectives (155, 161)?

258. Compare **altus** (**alt-**), *high*, *deep*; **potēns** (**potent-**), *powerful*; **brevis** (**brev-**), *short*. Decline the comparative of one of them.

259. Examine the following:

1. *Hic mōns altior est quam ille,* } *this mountain is higher*
2. *Hic mōns altior est illō,* } *than that.*

Observe that in 1 *quam* is used and *ille* is nominative, while in 2 *quam* is omitted and *illō* is ablative. The English meaning is the same in both sentences.

The ablative can be used only when the first substantive is in the nominative or the accusative. When *quam*, *than*, is used, the same case follows as precedes it.

260. **Rule of Syntax.** — *Comparison is expressed by using quam, than, or by the ablative without quam.*

261.

VOCABULARY

<i>vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift.</i>	<i>lātitudō, inis, f., width,</i>
<i>tūtus, a, um, safe.</i>	<i>breadth.</i>
<i>turpis, e, ugly, disgraceful,</i>	<i>perveniō, ire, pervēni, per-</i>
<i>infamous.</i>	<i>ventus, come up, arrive,</i>
<i>Rhodanus, ī, m., the Rhone.</i>	<i>reach.</i>
<i>quam, adv., than.</i>	<i>obsideō, ēre, obsēdi, obsessus,</i>
<i>latus,¹ lateris, n., side, flank.</i>	<i>besiege.</i>

262.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Oppidum multōs diēs ā Caesare erat oppugnātum.*
 2. *Paucīs mēnsibus cibī inopiā hostēs laborābunt.* 3. *In-*
colās ob eruptiōnem ex oppidō imperātor laudat. 4. *Quī*
clāmōribus Gallōrum terrentur? 5. *Tempus annī bellō*
nōn erat idōneum. 6. *Ille mōns in altitudīne est mīlle*
pedēs.

II. 1. *On that day Caesar left Rome.* 2. *That day was*
the end of the war. 3. *He left the city and hastened into*

¹ Do not confuse with the adjective *lātus, a, um*.

Gaul. 4. In that battle a few of our men were wounded in the head.

263.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi fīnitīmīs fortiōrēs erant. 2. Hoc flūmen quod vidētis altius est quam Rhodanus. 3. Rōmānī multīs rēbus potentiōrēs erant illīs gentibus. 4. Equōs vėlōciōrēs quam illōs omnēs vīdimus. 5. Turpissimum est agrōs sociōrum vāstāre. 6. Hoc latus castrōrum tūtius erat illō, quod hostēs discesserant. 7. Caesar Rōmā contendit et ad finēs Helvētiōrum pervenit. 8. Flūmen Rhodanus est lātum quīngentōs pedēs. 9. Vėlōciōrēs equitēs quam tuōs nōn vīdī. 10. Urbs, quam Rōmānī obsidēbant, lātitudine erat magna.

II. 1. The Celts are the bravest of all the Gauls. 2. Have you seen a more disgraceful flight? 3. That side of the fortifications that you see has been besieged for many days. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. What road is shorter than that? 6. This month is shorter than that.

LESSON 44

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

264. Adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus**, to the *nominative singular masculine*. The comparative is formed regularly (256, 2).

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher (pulchr-), <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrior, pulchr- ius	pulcherrimus, a, um
ācer (acr-), <i>keen</i> , <i>eager</i>	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, a, um

265. The following six adjectives ending in **-lis** form their superlative by adding **-limus, a, um** to the base. The comparative is regular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
similis, e (simil-), <i>like</i>	similior, ius	simillimus, a, um
dissimilis, e (dissimil-), <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, ius	dissimillimus, a, um
facilis, e (facil-), <i>easy</i>	facilior, ius	facillimus, a, um
difficilis, e (difficil-), <i>hard</i>	difficilior, ius	difficillimus, a, um
gracilis, e (gracil-), <i>slender</i>	gracilior, ius	gracillimus, a, um
humilis, e (humil-), <i>low</i>	humilior, ius	humillimus, a, um

266. Examine the following :

- Hic mōns centum pedibus altior est quam ille,** *this mountain is a hundred feet higher* (literally, *higher by a hundred feet*) *than that.*
- Hoc iter multō facilius est illō,** *this road is much easier* (literally, *easier by much*) *than that.*

Observe that the ablatives **centum pedibus** and **multō** express the *measure of difference* between the objects compared.

267. Rule of Syntax. — *The measure of difference is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

268. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used without making a comparison between two objects. Then the comparative means *too* or *rather*, and the superlative *very* or *exceedingly*.

1. *Hic mōns altissimus est, this mountain is very (or exceedingly) high.*
2. *Hic mōns altior est, this mountain is rather (or too) high.*

269.

VOCABULARY

<i>adventus, ūs, m., approach, arrival.</i>	<i>animus, i, m., mind, courage, spirit, disposition.</i>
<i>lēnis, e, smooth, gentle.</i>	<i>inter, prep. with acc., between, among, during.</i>
<i>exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus, await, wait for, expect.</i>	<i>certiōrem eum faciō, I inform him (literally, I make him more certain).</i>
<i>ibi, adv., in that place, there.</i>	

270.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Caesarī in Galliā erant multae legiōnēs.* 2. *Quod tūtius cōsilium est hōc?* 3. *Nāvēs, quibus milites erant missī, sunt vėlōcissimae.* 4. *Helvētiī finitimōs multōs annōs finibus prohibuerant.* 5. *Turpissimum est ē proeliō discēdere.*

II. 1. *There are not enough horsemen in Rome.*
 2. *Many soldiers have gone from Rome to Gaul.*
 3. *Caesar's army was compelled to fight for two days.*
 4. *Late at night the general ordered the soldiers to pitch camp.*

271.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Impetum hostium exspectāre est difficillimum.*
 2. *Rīpae huius flūminis sunt lēniōrēs.* 3. *Lēgātus multō fortior est meō frātre.* 4. *Pōns inter duo oppida factus erat.* 5. *Omnium urbis viārum haec est multō brevissima.*
 6. *Dē adventū nāvium eum certiōrem fēcērunt.* 7. *Iter quod inter montēs erat angustum et difficillimum erat.*
 8. *Collis in quō Rōmānī castra posuerant centum pedibus est altior illō quī ad vicum est.* 9. *Dē cāsū exercitūs*

lēgātōs certiōrēs fēcit. 10. Quī eōs certiōrēs dē Caesaris adventū fēcērunt?

II. 1. There¹ was there an exceedingly fierce battle. 2. The Rhone is five feet deeper than that river. 3. This city in many respects² is rather like³ Rome. 4. Their spirits were roused by the bravery of our men. 5. We informed them about the difficult road.

LESSON 45

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. Possum

272. Several common adjectives are irregularly compared. Which of these are irregular in English?

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um, <i>much</i>	— plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multi, ae, a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, ae, a
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senex, senis, <i>old</i> (476)	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis, e, <i>young</i>	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
superus, a, um, <i>above</i>	superior, superius, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus, summus, <i>highest</i>
īferus, a, um, <i>below</i>	īferior, īferius, <i>lower</i>	īfimus, īmus, <i>lowest</i>

¹ See note on 49, II. 3. ² rēs. ³ See 163.

273. *Plūs, more*, is not declined like other comparatives (257). Wherein is the difference?

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	—	plūs		plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris		plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—		plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs		plūrēs, is	plūra
ABL.	—	plūre		plūribus	plūribus

274. *Possum (pot(is) + sum), I am able, I can.*

PRIN. PARTS · *possum, posse, potui, —*

Learn all tenses of the indicative (497).

Observe

1. That the **t** of **pot** becomes **s** before **s**, and that the **f** of the tenses formed from the perfect stem is dropped after the **t** of **pot**.
2. That in other respects this compound of **sum** is formed and conjugated like **sum** (496).

275.

VOCABULARY

<i>fidēs, ei, f., trust, confidence.</i>	<i>accēdō, ere, accessi, acces-</i>
<i>potestās, ātis, f. (possum),</i>	<i>sūrus, go or come near,</i>
<i>power, authority.</i>	<i>approach.</i>
<i>nōbilis, e, well known, noble.</i>	<i>hūc, adv., to this place, hither.</i>
<i>amplus, a, um, large, exten-</i>	<i>quam maximus, the greatest</i>
<i>sive, ample.</i>	<i>possible, as large as pos-</i>
<i>permittō, ere, permisi, per-</i>	<i>sible (with superlatives</i>
<i>missus, give up, intrust,</i>	<i>quam has the force "as</i>
<i>permit.</i>	<i>possible").</i>

276.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōs difficilīus iter facere coēgit. 2. Sed hostēs eō diē impetum in eōs nōn fēcērunt. 3. Gallī dē eius cōsiliīs certiōrēs factī sunt. 4. Paucī dē nostrīs ad flūmen lātissimū pervēnerant. 5. Urbs, cuius moenia obsessimus, lātior mille passuum est illō oppidō.

II. 1. The house is many feet higher than the wall. 2. We have been waiting for the attack for five days. 3. The spirits of the cavalry were aroused by Caesar's speech. 4. We shall inform him of your misfortune.

277.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Poterat; potuerat; potestis; poterit. 2. Caesar quam maximis itineribus in Galliam contendit. 3. Accēdere vīcum, quī summō¹ in monte positus est, nōn possunt. 4. Omnia in fidem et potestātem populī Rōmānī illae nātiōnēs permīsērunt. 5. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum nōbillissimōs cīvitatīs mittunt. 6. Aestāte plūra proelia quam hieme pugnātur. 7. Legiōnem mūnīre summū collem iubet. 8. Helvētīi ob flūmina maxima trānsire in prōvinciam nostram nōn poterant. 9. Pompēius sex annīs minor nātū erat quam Caesar.

II. 1. On the top of the hill was a very small house. 2. The general was ten years older than the lieutenant. 3. Very old people cannot make long journeys. 4. Very many have come hither because the fields are rather extensive. 5. We all ought to do as much as possible.

¹ on the highest part of, on the top of. Also *īmus*, the lowest part of, the bottom of; *medius*, a, um, the middle of.

LESSON 46

REVIEW. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

278. Compare the following adjectives, giving the English meanings :

turpis*	pessimus*	ācrior	minimus
asper	tūtior	īmus	superus
amplus*	vēlōx*	similis	plūrēs*
nōbilis*	vetustior	maior*	senior

279. Adverbs are formed from adjectives.

1. Adjectives of the first and second declension form the adverb by adding *-ē* to the base.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
cārus, <i>dear</i>	cār-	cārē, <i>dearly</i>
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>
miser, <i>wretched</i>	miser-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i>

2. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding *-ter* to the stem. Stems ending in *-nt* drop *-t*.

ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
fortis, <i>brave</i>	forti-	fortiter, <i>bravely</i>
prūdēns, <i>wise</i>	prūdent-	prūdentē, <i>wisely</i>

3. In some adjectives the *ablative singular* serves as an adverb, in others the *neuter accusative singular* :

prīmus, <i>first</i>	prīmō, <i>at first</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	multum, <i>much</i>
facilis, <i>easy</i>	facile, <i>easily</i>

280. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective ; and

the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final *-us* to *-ē* (note one exception below). *It is, therefore, necessary to know the comparison of the adjective in order to compare the adverb.*

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus	cārē, <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
bonus	bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
facilis	facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
ācer	ācriter, <i>eagerly</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
multus	multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum

1. Form and compare the adverbs of the starred adjectives in 278.

281.

VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, <i>drive, lead, do.</i>	agmen, agminis, n. (agō), <i>army (on the march), column; novissimum agmen, the rear; primum agmen, the van.</i>
instruō, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus, <i>draw up, form, arrange.</i>	
administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>manage, direct, administer.</i>	proximus, a, um, <i>nearest, next</i> (163).
plūrimum possum, <i>I am very powerful, have most influence.</i>	apud, prep. with acc., <i>among, with.</i>

282.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Apud Helvētiōs Orgetorīx plūrimum poterat.
2. Rēs ab imperātōre optimē administrābantur.
3. Helvētīi multō ācrius quam finitimī cum hostibus contendēbant.
4. Caesar aciem summō in colle instrūxit et impetum exspectāvit.
5. Vīcus ad quem primum agmen pervēnerat

proximus erat finibus Gallōrum. 6. Omnia quae lēgātus iusserat militēs bene ēgērunt. 7. Ubi¹ Caesar ad novissimum agmen pervēnit, acerrimē cum hostibus equitēs pugnābant. 8. Summus collis ā peditibus nostrīs occupātus est. 9. In eō proeliō Orgetōrigis filiā et ūnum ē filiis nostrī cēpērunt, et multōs interfēcērunt. 10. Nostrī quam fortissimē pugnāvērunt, sed expugnāre oppidum nōn potuērunt. 11. Nostrī sociī apud finitimōs ob amīcitiam populī Rōmānī plūrimum possunt.

II. 1. He hastened into the territories of the Helvetii and arrived there on the fourth day. 2. Caesar was very powerful among the allies of the Roman people. 3. The enemy attacked the rear very fiercely. 4. Who can manage this affair well? 5. Caesar ordered the allies to make as long² marches as possible. 6. The general will draw up the line of battle very carefully.³ 7. The best citizens are not always the bravest soldiers.

¹ *when.*² *magnus.*³ See 147, 3.

Agmen

LESSON 47

CHAPTER VI

THE TWO ROUTES BY WHICH THE HELVETHI COULD LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY

283. Duōbus itineribus Helvētīi domō¹ exīre potuērunt. Ūnum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum angustum et difficile erat, quod mōns altissimus impendēbat. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram multō facilius est, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque² vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnia ad profectiōnem ab Helvētiīs sunt comparāta et ad rīpam Rhodanī convēnērunt.

LESSON 48

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

284. Learn the forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns with their meanings (486): **ego**, *I*; **tū**, *you*; **sui**, *of himself, herself, itself*.

285. USE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

1. The pronoun of the first person is **ego**, *I*; of the second person **tū**, *you*; of the third person **is**, *ea*, **id**, *he, she, it* (190, *e*). They are used in Latin as subjects only to show emphasis or to avoid ambiguity.
- a. **Tē vocō**, *I'm calling you*. ("I" is unemphatic, and therefore **ego** is not used.)
- b. **Ego tē vocō**, *I (emphatic) am calling you*. (Such emphasis

¹ Why is there no preposition? See 231. ² *I.e.* the river Rhone.

might be expressed in English by the translation,
 "It is I who am calling you.")

c. **Ego eum laudō ; is mē culpat, I praise him ; he blames me.**

It will be recalled that in the exercises of the preceding lessons the subjects of the verbs, when pronouns, were not expressed. Why is it impossible to omit the personal pronouns as subjects in English as often as in Latin ?

286.

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers to the subject of the verb.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I praise <i>myself</i> | We praise <i>ourselves</i> |
| 2. You praise <i>yourself</i> | You praise <i>yourselves</i> |
| 3. { He praises <i>himself</i> } | They praise <i>themselves</i> |
| { She praises <i>herself</i> } | |

2. In Latin the pronouns of the first and second person, **ego** and **tū**, are used both as personal and reflexive pronouns. There is no special form for the reflexive as in English. In the third person, however, there is a special form for the reflexive, **suī**, of *himself, herself, itself*.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. mē laudō , I praise <i>myself</i> | nōs laudāmus , we praise <i>ourselves</i> |
| 2. tē laudās , you praise <i>yourself</i> | vōs laudātis , you praise <i>yourselves</i> |
| 3. sē laudat , he praises <i>himself</i> | sē laudant , they praise <i>themselves</i> |

3. Review 190. Do not confuse **is** with **sē**. The latter always refers to the subject of the verb; the former never does.

- a. **Vir sē videt**, *the man sees himself*.
- b. **Vir eum videt**, *the man sees him* (some one else).
4. Review 207, 2. Do not confuse **ipse** with **sē**. **Ipse** is not a reflexive, but merely emphasizes the noun to which it belongs.
- a. **Vir ipse eum vidit**, *the man himself saw him*, or *the man saw him himself*.
- b. **Vir sē vidit**, *the man saw himself*.
- c. **Virum ipsum vidimus**, *we saw the man himself*.

287. The preposition **cum** with the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns is appended to them ; **tēcum**, instead of **cum tē** ; **nōbiscum**, instead of **cum nōbīs**. So also **quibuscum**, *with whom*, instead of **cum quibus**.

288. Examine the following :

1. **Ego, quī haec faciō, sum tuus pater**, *I, who do this, am your father*.
2. **Vōs, quī haec facitis, estis mei amīcī**, *you, who do this, are my friends*.

Review 197. Observe that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent of the relative.

289.

VOCABULARY

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus , <i>give up, surrender.</i>	commeātus, ūs , m., <i>provisions, supplies.</i>
committō, ere, commisi, commissus , <i>intrust, commit</i> ; proelium committō , <i>begin battle.</i>	spēs, ei , f., <i>hope.</i> sine , prep. with abl., <i>without.</i> ante , adv. and prep. with acc., <i>before.</i>
recipiō, ere, recēpi, receptus , <i>take back, receive</i> ; sē recipere , <i>retreat, betake one's self.</i>	postea , adv., <i>afterwards.</i> autem , conj. (never the first word), <i>but, however.</i>

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>mē recipiō, I retreat</i> | <i>nōs recipimus, we retreat</i> |
| 2. <i>tē recipis, you retreat</i> | <i>vōs recipitis, you retreat</i> |
| 3. <i>sē recipit, he retreats</i> | <i>sē recipiunt, they retreat</i> |

290.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnis rei pūblicae spēs in mīlitum virtūte posita¹ est. 2. Brevī tempore quattuor ē principibus Rōmam mitentur. 3. Caesarī plūs potestātis erat quam Pompēiō. 4. Haec rēs hostibus nūntiāta est, quōrum equitātus ā nostrīs summō in colle vidēbātur.

II. 1. Caesar was very powerful among the Romans on account of his bravery. 2. There our men fought very fiercely. 3. The line of battle that he had drawn up was next to the river. 4. It is very difficult to manage this.

291.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sine vōbīs erimus miserrimī. 2. Ego sum mīles, tū es nauta. 3. Nōbīs est satis cibī. 4. Post id proelium hostēs domum sē recēpērunt. 5. Magnā cum celeritāte in prōvinciam nōs recipiēmus. 6. Vir sē culpat, ego autem eum laudō. 7. Ubi Galli ad eōrum finēs pervēnērunt, sēsē dēdidērunt. 8. Caesar lēgiōnēs ad² sē convocārī iubet. 9. Paucīs ante diēbus lēgātum ipsum fugere coēgērunt. 10. Vōs quī haec fēcistis culpāre vōs dēbētis. 11. Quis tēcum Athēnās ibit?

II. 1. The enemy with whom you were fighting have retreated. 2. I shall compel the chief himself to come to me. 3. Caesar praised the plans that were reported to him. 4. You wish to retreat, but I wish to begin battle. 5. We shall always defend ourselves bravely. 6. The girl herself will defend him. 7. He will do this himself.

¹ depends. ² before.

LESSON 49

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. DATIVE OF SERVICE

292. The possessive adjectives are as follows. They are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	meus, ¹ a, um, <i>my,</i> <i>mine</i>	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
2D PER.	tuus, a, um, <i>your,</i> <i>yours</i>	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i>
3D PER.	suus, a, um, <i>his (own),</i> <i>her(own), its (own)</i>	suus, a, um, <i>their (own),</i> <i>their</i>

293. USE OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

1. They agree in gender, number, and case with the noun to which they belong, and not with the noun to which they refer. They are not used except for emphasis or contrast.

- a. **Suum patrem puella vidit,** *the girl saw her father.*
- b. **Vestrum amicum vidimus,** *we saw your (plur.) friend.*
- c. **Tuās filiās vidit,** *he saw your (sing.) daughters.*

2. **Suus, a, um,** is reflexive, and refers to the subject of the verb. When "his," "her," "its," "their," does not refer to the subject, use the genitive of **is, eius, his, her, its ; eōrum, their ; eārum, their** (referring to feminine).

- a. **Agricola suum equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his (i.e. his own) horse.*
- b. **Agricola eius equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his (some one else's, not the farmer's) horse.*
- c. **Agricola eōrum equōs laudat,** *the farmer praises their horses.*
- d. **Agricolae suōs equōs laudant,** *the farmers praise their (their own) horses.*

¹ The vocative singular is **mī,**

294. Examine the following :

1. **Magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit**, *it was a great help to our men* (literally, *it was for a great help to our men*).
2. **Tertiam aciem nostrīs subsidiō mīsit**, *he sent the third line as a relief to our men* (literally, *for a relief to our men*).

Observe that the datives **magnō ūsuī** and **subsidiō** denote the end or purpose, that for which a thing serves. Therefore this use of the dative is called the *dative of service*.

295. **Rule of Syntax.** — *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to denote that for which a thing serves.*

296.

SUMMARY

	PERSONAL PRONOUNS	REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES
FIRST PERSON	ego	meī ¹	meus, a, um, <i>my, mine</i> noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
SECOND PERSON	tū	tui ¹	tuus, a, um, <i>your, yours</i> (sing.) vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i> (plur.)
THIRD PERSON	is, ea, id	sui ¹	suus, a, um, <i>his, his own, her, her own, its, its own, their, their own</i> (reflexive) When not reflexive, use the genitive of is, ea, id.

¹ Why is there no nominative form for reflexive pronouns ?

297.

VOCABULARY

redeō, redire, rediī, reditum,
go back, return.

dīmīttō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmīssus,
send off, dismiss, let go.

reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus,
give back, return, render.

sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sus-
tentus, *hold up, withstand,*
sustain.

opus, operis, n., *work, labor.*

propter, prep. with acc., *on*
account of.

tamen, adv., *yet, however,*
nevertheless.

itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*

inde, adv., *thence, thereupon.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *use, advantage,*
benefit.

298.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc mihi, illud tibi est difficile. 2. Postea in silvas sese receperunt. 3. Nos de proelio certiores faciet. 4. Caesar eos sibi arma dedere cogit. 5. Milites se laudabant sed eos culpabant. 6. Nobis Romae est satis cibi.

II. 1. Some retreated in one direction, some in another. 2. The Gauls themselves had been frightened by Caesar's soldiers. 3. He himself is praising himself. 4. Will you go with me to Corinth? 5. They ought themselves to fight.

299.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar equitatum auxilio suis misit. 2. Tui amici tibi, mei mihi sunt carissimī. 3. Labienus unum latus castrorum ripis fluminis muniēbat. 4. Opera nostris erant magno usui. 5. Sustinere impetum non poterant; itaque in suos fines redierunt. 6. Hostes Caesarī se suaque omnia dēdiderunt. 7. Propter operis magnitudinem flumen transire Helvetiū non potuerunt. 8. Caesar eius milites dimisit, suos autem in castris tenuit. 9. Consul in fines Helvetiorum contendere quam maximis itineribus con-

stituit. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs adventum suum expectāre iussit.

II. 1. Caesar compelled the Gauls to return all his possessions¹ to him. 2. They will return everything to him. 3. The general sent three cohorts as a help to his men. 4. Thereupon the Gauls attacked the rear. 5. They arrived at daybreak and began to fortify their camp.

LESSON 50

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE

300. Review 195, 216. Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is referred to, without indicating *just what* one. They vary in degree of indefiniteness. Learn the declension of the following indefinite pronouns, carefully distinguishing the meanings:

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
quis	qua	quid (quod), somebody, anybody
aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquid), some one
quisquam		quicquam, any one (at all) (no plur.)
quidam	quaedam	quoddam, quiddam, a certain one
quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque, each one, every one
quivīs	quaevis	quodvis, quidvis, any one (you please)

1. The meanings of the neuter would be *something*, etc.
2. **Quisquam** and **quisque** are declined like **quis**; **quivīs** like **qui**.
3. In the neuter the **quid**-forms are used as pronouns, the **quod**-forms as adjectives.

¹ Express by the neuter plural of the possessive adjective.

301. USES OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. **Quis**, *some one, any one*, is never the first word in its clause. It is generally used only after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**.
Sī quid his accidit, *if anything happens to these*.
2. **Quisque**, *each*, should be distinguished from **omnis**, *all, every*. It is not often used in the plural, and regularly follows the word to which it belongs.
3. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences.

302. Examine the following :

1. **Vir summae virtūtis fuit**, } *he was a man of very great*
2. **Vir summā virtūte fuit**, } *courage.*
3. **Vir fortis fuit**, *he was a man of courage* (a brave man).

Observe that the genitive phrase **summae virtūtis**, and the ablative phrase **summā virtūte**, describe the noun **vir** ; and that an adjective modifies the nouns **virtūtis** and **virtūte**. When a noun that describes or modifies another is not modified by an adjective, an adjective in agreement with the noun is used instead of a descriptive ablative or genitive, as in 3.

303. **Rule of Syntax.** — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun, with a limiting adjective, may be used to describe an object.*

304. VOCABULARY

diligentia , ae, f., <i>diligence, carefulness, industry.</i>	aliēnus , a, um, <i>another's, strange, unfavorable.</i>
grātia , ae, f., <i>favor, influence, kindness.</i>	reperiō , ire, repperi , reptus , <i>find, discover, ascertain.</i>
plēbs , plēbis , f., <i>the common people.</i>	sī , conj., <i>if.</i>
	nisi , conj., <i>if not, unless, except.</i>

305.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī sua omnia Caesarī dēdere iubentur. 2. Auxilium, quod ā Labiēnō missum erat, equitātūī fuit ūsūī magnō. 3. Lēgiōnī nōn erat satis cibī, itaque domum sē recēpit. 4. Gallī sē suaque omnia Rōmānīs dēdidērunt, quod magnitūdine eōrum operis terrēbantur. 5. Hostēs in nostram aciem impetum fēcerant.

II. 1. The general ordered the hostages to come before¹ him. 2. When he returned to Rome, he saw his father. 3. We all love our country. 4. We like our friends, you yours. 5. He praised his own children, but blamed his.

306.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quemque domō exīre iubent. 2. Sī quis eius filiā laudat, laetus est. 3. Quīdam ex Gallīs multā nocte ad Caesarem contendērunt. 4. Orgetorīx apud Helvētiōs erat magnā grātiā. 5. Quis dē hostium cāsū aliquid novī² repperit? 6. Liberī quīque³ pugnāre nōn poterant in ūnum locum convocātī erant. 7. Princeps diligentiā fuit magnae potestātis apud suōs. 8. Neque (*and not*) ē proeliō tōtō diē quisquam discessit. 9. Sī in aliēnō locō proelium committent, vincentur. 10. Fīnitimī nostrī bonō animō⁴ esse in nōs dicuntur.

II. 1. Every one ought to love his country. 2. She is wretched, unless some one says something good² about her. 3. A certain one of the merchants informed Caesar of this. 4. Caesar was a man of great influence among the common people. 5. Some fled in one direction, some in another.

¹ ad. ² See 250, 2. ³ quīque = quī (relative) + que. ⁴ bonō animō, *well disposed*.

LESSON 51

PARTICIPLES. FORMS. DECLENSION. MEANINGS

307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the participles may be formed from the stems that are obtained from the principal parts (86):

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	pres. stem + ns ¹	wanting
FUTURE	participial stem + ūrus	Gerundive. Pres. stem + ndus ¹
PERFECT	wanting	the last one of the principal parts

1. Learn the participles, with their meanings, of the model verbs (491-495).
2. Participles ending in **-ns** are declined like adjectives of the third declension (479); those in **-us**, like **bonus** (62).

308. The participle is a *verbal adjective*. As a verb, it may govern a case; as an adjective, it agrees with a substantive. The tenses of the participle denote time, *not absolutely*, as in the indicative mood, *but with reference to the time of the verb* of the clause in which it stands. The following examples will show how the time of the participle depends upon that of the main verb.

¹ **iō** verbs have a connecting vowel **e** before the ending; *i.e.* **audiēns**, **audiendus**.

1. **Videō eum id agentem**, *I see him as he does it* (literally, *him doing it*).
2. **Vidēbam eum id agentem**, *I saw him as he was doing it*.
3. **Vidēbō eum id agentem**, *I shall see him as he will be doing it*.

309.

TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

1. *Present*: representing an action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the verb.
2. *Perfect*: representing an action as *completed* at the time indicated by the tense of the verb.
3. *Future*: expressing an action that is *subsequent* to the time of the verb.

310. Form all the participles, giving the English meanings, of : **dō**, *give* ; **videō**, *see* ; **faciō**, *make, do* ; **mūniō**, *fortify* ; **eō**, *go*. (500.)

311. Participles are used in Latin more extensively than in English. In Latin the participle is used to express ideas that are often expressed in English by a relative clause, by clauses beginning with "when," "after," "since," "although," "while," "if," etc. Study carefully the following examples which show the various relations that the participle expresses :

1. **Militēs missōs nōn culpāvit**, *he did not blame the soldiers who had been sent* (literally, *the having been sent soldiers*).
2. **Vidēbam eōs id agentēs**, *I saw them while (or when) they were doing this*.
3. **Caesar cōsul factus in Galliam contendit**, *Caesar, after he had been made consul, hastened into Gaul* (literally, *Caesar having been made consul, etc.*).
4. **Galli hīs rēbus permōtī obsidēs misērunt**, *the Gauls, since*

(or because) they were alarmed by these things, sent hostages (literally, the Gauls having been alarmed, etc.).

5. **Orgetorix damnātus interficiētur**, if Orgetorix is condemned, he will be killed (literally, Orgetorix having been condemned will be killed).
6. **Vulnerātus diū pugnābat**, although he had been wounded, he fought for a long time (literally, having been wounded, he fought).
7. **Multōs vicōs captōs incendit**, he captured and burned many villages (literally, he burned many captured villages).

312.

VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., approach.

vāllum, ī, n., rampart, earth-works.

posterus, a, um, next, following.

circum, prep. with acc., around.

circumveniō, ire, circumvēnī, circumventus, come around, surround.

permovēō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus, influence, arouse.

ēdūcō, ēre, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out.

laccessō, ere, laccessivī, laccessītus, attack, harass.

Sēquanī, ōrum, m. plur., the *Sequani* (a tribe of Gauls).

313.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Hīc grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat.
2. Eīs aliquid cōsili erat quod Rōmānīs nōn erat grātum.
3. Sī quid reperītur, Caesarī semper nūntiātur.
4. Suam quisque melius quam aliēnam patriam amat.
5. Hominēs esse summā virtūte dīcuntur.

II. 1. Caesar has been informed of his arrival. 2. The day that Caesar had appointed¹ with the ambassadors has come. 3. He ordered the hostages to come to him. 4. He carried all his possessions with him.

¹ cōstituō.

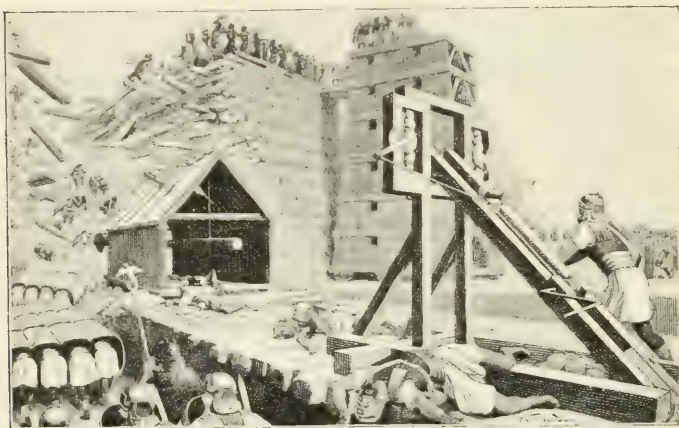
314.

EXERCISES

I. 1. His rebus permoti Rōmā exire mātūrant. 2. In lēgātum cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūcentem Gallī impetum fēcērunt. 3. Posterō diē nostrōs aditūs oppidī munientēs hostēs lacescent. 4. Rōmānī hanc urbem vāllō et moenibus mūnitam obsidēre cōstituērunt. 5. Caesar duōs diēs ā dextrō cornū laccessitus sustinēre impetūs poterat. 6. Legiōnēs ē castrīs ēductās instrūxit. 7. Suum amicum Athēnīs exeuntem videt. 8. Principēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur. 9. Caesar dē coniūrātiōne quam Gallī fēcērant certior factus est. 10. Lēgātus Gallōs quī castra circumveniēbant sēsē dēdere coēgit.

II. 1. When Caesar had been informed of this, he hurried to Rome. 2. The general captured¹ their town and fortified it. 3. The enemy harassed us as we were crossing the river. 4. If you are defeated, you will retreat into Italy. 5. Who will go with me into that city that you see? 6. Although we have been surrounded, we will fight bravely.

¹ Do not use the indicative.



A Siege

LESSON 52

THE PARTICIPLE (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

315. **Ablative Absolute.** — A noun or a pronoun in the ablative, with a participle agreeing with it, may be used to express any of the ideas mentioned in 311. This construction will be understood best by a careful study of the following examples :

- | | | | | |
|--|---|--|---|---|
| <p>1. Caesar, Germānis
victis, in hī-
berna vēnit,</p> | } | <p><i>after the Germans had
been conquered,
when he had conquered
the Germans,
after conquering the
Germans,
having conquered the
Germans,
now that the Germans
had been conquered,
the Germans having
been conquered,</i></p> | } | <p><i>Caesar went
into winter
quarters.</i></p> |
| <p>2. Oppidō expugnātō,
hostēs vincent,</p> | } | <p><i>if the town is captured,
by capturing the town,
since the town has been
captured,
the town having been
captured,</i></p> | } | <p><i>they will con-
quer the
enemy.</i></p> |
| <p>3. Nōbīs castra mū-
nientibus, Gallī
pervēnerunt,</p> | } | <p><i>while we were fortify-
ing the camp,
as we were fortifying
the camp,</i></p> | } | <p><i>the Gauls ar-
rived.</i></p> |

Observe that the ablative absolutes, **Germānis victis, oppidō expugnātō, nōbis mūnientibus**, are translated in a variety of ways. In translating an ablative absolute, one must use judgment in selecting a translation that is consistent with the meaning of the main verb.

Notice that the ablative absolute construction is used only when the participle does not agree with a noun of the main clause. The word "absolute" means that the ablative phrase stands by itself. For example, such a sentence as "When the Gauls had been conquered, they returned home" would be rendered, **Gallī victī domum rediērunt**, and the ablative absolute construction could not be used, because **victī** agrees with **Gallī**, which is the subject of **rediērunt**.

316. The participle is sometimes omitted, and two substantives, or a substantive and an adjective, are used in the ablative absolute construction :

Duce Caesare Rōmānī semper vincēbant,	{	<i>under the leadership of Caesar, if Caesar was their leader, when Caesar was their leader,</i>	}	<i>the Romans always used to conquer.</i>
--	---	--	---	---

317. Remember that the Latin perfect participle is *passive*, there being no perfect active participle. The ablative absolute is often used to supply this lack of a perfect active participle; for example, the sentence "Caesar having done this returned to Rome" cannot be expressed literally in Latin. It must be changed to the passive form, "This having been done, Caesar returned to Rome," and then it may be rendered : **hōc factō, Caesar Rōmam rediit**.

318.

VOCABULARY

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*

signum, i, n., *sign, ensign, standard* (of the legion).

quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift up, raise, remove, take away.*

redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back.*

obtimeō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus, *possess, obtain, retain.*

convertō, ere, converti, conversus, *turn about, change.*

signa convertō, *face about* (literally, *turn the standards about*).

occidō, ere, occidī, occisus, *cut down, kill, slay.*

319.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Legiōnem auxiliō nostris diū lacessītis mīsit.
2. Caesar hostium clāmōribus permōtus mūnīre aditūs castrōrum coepit. 3. Cōsul lēgātum sēcum redire Rōmam iubēbit. 4. Equitātus Gallōs nostra castra circumvenientēs lacessēbat. 5. Lēgātus nihil novī repperit.

II. 1. After the Helvetii had been defeated, they were compelled to return home. 2. He led his forces out of the camp and drew them up. 3. Although many of our men had been wounded they fought bravely. 4. The Gauls could not fortify the mountain themselves.

320.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Tē imperātōre, nōs nōn dēdēmus. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, suōs in hiberna redūxit. 3. Hīs Caesarī nūntiātis, quam primum Rōmā exiit. 4. Peditēs in castra reductōs hostēs moenibus prohibēre dux iubet. 5. Suīs¹ ab Gallis permōtis¹ Caesar dixit "Impetum hostium expectāre est difficile." 6. Novissimum agmen, signis conversis, laces-

¹ Is this ablative absolute?

sere Helvētiōs imperātor iubet. 7. Caesarī Rōmam redīre coāctō hoc proelium erat nūntiātum. 8. Hostēs, multīs occīsīs, fortiter nostrum impetum sustinēbant. 9. Omnī spē victōriae sublātā, Helvētīi cum mulieribus liberisque domum rediērunt. 10. Commeātūs quōs Gallī obtinēbant ab Rōmānīs incēnsī erant.

II. 1. Having fought this battle, Caesar led his forces across the river. 2. If you are brave, the republic will be preserved. 3. When the hostages had been freed, they returned to their people. 4. When their leader had been killed, the Gauls surrendered to Caesar. 5. The Romans faced about and bravely attacked the enemy. 6. After the top of the hill had been fortified, we awaited the enemy. 7. When the Romans had fortified the hill, they returned to their camp. 8. If you burn our villages, we shall kill your leader.

LESSON 53

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VII

CAESAR ATTEMPTS TO CHECK THE MARCH OF THE
HELVETII. THEY SEND AMBASSADORS TO HIM

321. Hīs rēbus Caesarī nūntiātīs, mātūrat Rōmā exīre atque quam maximīs itineribus ad Genāvam contendit. Erat omninō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna.¹ Quā² rē prōvinciam tōtam praebēre quam maximum mīlitum numerum et pontem quī erat ad Genāvam rescindī iubet. Ubi dē

¹ but (only) one.

² Quā rē, therefore.

eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis. Quī¹ lēgātī iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam ā Caesare postulant. Sed temporibus antiquīs Helvētiī cōsulem Cassium occīderant exercitumque eius sub iugum mīserant. Quā rē Caesar hominibus inimicō animō² iter per prōvinciam nōn dedit. Tamen diem colloquiō cum lēgātīs cōstituit.

LESSON 54

INFINITIVES. FORMATION AND MEANINGS

322. Review 182, 183, 184, 307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the infinitive may be obtained from the principal parts :

INFINITIVES

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	Second one of the principal parts.	Change final e of present infinitive to i , except in third conjugation, which changes final ere to i .
FUTURE	Future active participle and esse .	Supine in -um (which is the same form as accusative singular neuter of perfect passive participle), and iri .
PERFECT	Perfect stem + isse .	Perfect passive participle and esse .

¹ The relative at the beginning of a sentence often has the force of a demonstrative, hence *Quī lēgātī*, *these ambassadors*. ² See 303.

1. Learn the infinitives, with English meanings, of the model verbs (491-495).

323. Form all participles and infinitives, giving the English meanings, of

vinciō, *bind*.

iubeō, *order*.

relinquō, *leave*.

sum, *I am* (496).

iaciō, *throw*.

appellō, *name, call*.

vincō, *conquer*.

eō, *go* (500).

324.

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, **ātis**, f., *reputation, influence, authority*.

littera, **ae**, f., *letter of the alphabet; (plur.), letter, document*.

rēs frūmentāria, **reī frūmentāriae**, *supplies of grain, provisions*.

cottidiānus, **a**, **um**, *daily*.

scribō, **ere**, **scripsī**, **scriptus**, *write*.

cadō, **ere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, *fall, perish, die*.

at, **conj.**, *but*.

numquam, **adv.**, *never*.

325.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī cōsulem cōpiās instruentem laccessīvit.
2. Rōmānī, signīs conversīs, oppidum ex itinere oppugnāvērunt. 3. Caesare cōsule Helvētīi coniūrātiōnem faciēbant. 4. Germānī victī finitimōs virtūte superābant. 5. Nostrī autem multās mulierēs captās domum mīsērunt.

II. 1. If I am your leader, will you attack the enemy?
2. The women could do this themselves. 3. After a few had been slain, the army was led back to camp. 4. And so hope was taken away from the Gauls.

326.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Scribī; sustulisse; cāsūrus esse. 2. Instruī; prohibuisse; missōs esse; prohibērī. 3. Capī; cēpī; reddidisse; dēdidisse. 4. Missūram esse; mīsisse; redūcī. 5. Paucae dē filiābus occīsaē esse dīcuntur. 6. Numquam culpārī cupimus. 7. Gallī ab finitimīs cottidiānīs proeliīs lacessītī ex suīs finibus discēdere coepērunt. 8. Caesar multās literās scripsisse dīcēbātur. 9. Rēs frūmentāriae portārī nāvibus nōn poterant. 10. At decem ē nostrīs cecidisse in hōc proeliō dīcuntur.

II. 1. He is said to be a man of great reputation. 2. Those women are said to have been sent to Rome. 3. This place cannot be taken by storm by the enemy on account of its very large ramparts. 4. You were compelled to retreat into the province. 5. Caesar ordered the ships to be sent away. 6. This is said to have been a great advantage to them.

LESSON 55

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. SIMPLE STATEMENTS

327. The words or thoughts of a person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (*i.e.* direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (*i.e.* indirect discourse) is one in which the original words or thoughts are stated in the words of another, and conform to the construction of the sentence in which they stand.

The English sentence, "I am present," when quoted directly, is stated: "He said, 'I am present.'" When quoted indirectly, it assumes this form: "He said that he

was present," or, after a present tense of the verb of saying, "He says that he is present." An indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word "that," although this may be omitted, as, "He says (that) he is coming."

328. Examine carefully the following:

DIRECT DISCOURSE

tū venis, *you are coming.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit tē venire, *he says that you are coming, or he says you are coming.*

Note

1. That the English expresses the indirect statement by a clause introduced by "that" (expressed or understood).
2. That there is no word in Latin to correspond to the "that" in English.
3. That the Latin changes the verb of the direct statement to the same tense of the infinitive, and changes the case of the subject to the accusative.

329. Rule of Syntax. — *Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with subject accusative.*

330. Review 308. The tenses of the infinitive do not follow the tense of the introductory verb. Like the tenses of the participle, they merely denote time *relative* to that of the main verb. The present infinitive describes an action as *going on at the time* of the main verb; the perfect as *completed*; the future as *not yet begun*.

The following examples will show to what tenses of the infinitive the various tenses of the indicative are changed :

TENSE	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
PRESENT	veniō, <i>I am coming</i>	PRESENT videt mē venīre, <i>he sees that I am coming</i>
		PAST vidit mē venīre, <i>he saw that I was coming</i>
IMPERFECT	veniēbam, <i>I was coming</i>	PRESENT audit mē venisse, <i>he hears that I came, or have come</i>
PERFECT	vēnī, <i>I have come, I came</i>	PAST audivit mē venisse, <i>he heard that I came, or had come</i>
PLUPERFECT	vēneram, <i>I had come</i>	
FUTURE	veniam, <i>I shall come</i>	PRESENT spērat mē ventūrum (esse), <i>he hopes that I shall come</i>
		PAST spērāvit mē ventūrum (esse), <i>he hoped that I should come</i>

CAUTION. — The subject of the infinitive should never be omitted in Latin.

331.

VOCABULARY

existimō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>think, believe, suppose.</i>	trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus, <i>give up, surrender, deliver.</i>
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>point out, show, mention.</i>	cōspectus, ūs, m., <i>sight, view.</i>
spērō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>hope.</i>	complūrēs, a (ia), <i>a great many, very many.</i>
respondeō, ere, respondi, respōsus, <i>answer, reply.</i>	
sciō, scīre, scivī, scitus, <i>know, know how.</i>	

332.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī sē domum recipiunt. 2. Caesar Gallōs sē domum recipere dixit. 3. Nostra arma numquam trādēmus. 4. Respondēmus nostra arma numquam nōs trāditūrōs (esse). 5. Hoc in cōspectū suī¹ imperātōris ēgissemīles exīstimāvit. 6. Armīs trāditīs, in Caesaris potestātem Gallī vēnerant. 7. Caesar nūtiāvit Gallōs, armīs trāditīs, in suam potestātem vēnisse. 8. Omnēs spērāmus hanc rem ā lēgātō bene administrātum īrī. 9. Caesar suīs dixit "Quis scit hunc pontem facere?" 10. Imperātōrī nūtiātum est complūrēs aliōs aliam in partem fugere. 11. Lēgātī respondērunt "Nōs ā finitimīs nostrīs diū lacessītī sumus."

II. 1. The gods will give us help 2. They thought that the gods would give them help. 3. We have shown that the Gauls were men of the greatest² courage. 4. I hope many have not fallen. 5. We can do this ourselves. 6. They said they could do this themselves. 7. Caesar replied, "I hope that they will retreat."

¹ The reflexive pronouns and adjectives in an indirect statement refer to the subject of the main verb of "saying," "thinking," etc.

² Do not use *maximus*.

LESSON 56

DEPONENT VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH **ūtor**, **fruor**, ETC.

333. Deponent verbs have *passive forms* with *active meanings*. These passive forms are regular in their formation and inflection, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are as follows :

	PRESENT IND. PASS.	PRESENT INF. PASS.	PERFECT IND. PASS.
1ST CONJ.	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum, <i>I urge, encourage</i>
2D CONJ.	vereor	verērī	veritus sum, <i>I fear</i>
3D CONJ.	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum, <i>I follow</i>
4TH CONJ.	potior	potirī	potitus sum, <i>I get possession of</i>

1. Learn all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of these four model verbs. (503.)

334. Deponent verbs have a *future active* infinitive instead of a future passive, and they have the *participles* of both *active* and *passive* voices.

335. Review 317. The perfect passive participle of a deponent verb is *active* in meaning.

Cohortātus militēs proelium commisit, *after encouraging* (literally, *having encouraged*) *his soldiers, he began the battle.*

336. Examine the following :

1. **Equīs ūtuntur**, *they use horses.*
2. **Vitā fruitur**, *he enjoys life.*

Observe that **equīs** and **vitā** are ablatives of instrument, although the corresponding words in English are the direct objects of their verbs.

337. Rule of Syntax. — *The instrumental ablative is used with the deponent verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor, and their compounds.*

338.

VOCABULARY

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, <i>use, employ.</i>	proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, <i>set out, march, go.</i>
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow.</i>	arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, <i>think, suppose.</i>
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, <i>encourage, exhort.</i>	pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, <i>expel, drive away, rout.</i>
potior, potirī, potitus sum, <i>get possession of.</i>	praesidium, ī, n., <i>defense, guard, garrison.</i>
fossa, ae, f., <i>ditch, trench.</i>	

339.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar complūrēs sēcum in Ītaliā itūrōs (esse) sciēbat. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, hostēs sē recipere coācti sunt. 3. Lēgātī dēmōnstrant sibi esse multōs equitēs. 4. Incolae respondērunt sēsē rēs frūmentāriās dedisse. 5. Lēgātus sē expugnāre oppidum posse spērat.

II. 1. The Gauls thought Caesar would not fight with them. 2. All those arms that you see have been given up. 3. Caesar saw that the enemy were being drawn up on top of the hill. 4. The ambassadors replied that many were leaving their homes.

340.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Arbitrāris; ūtiminī; proficīscētur; proficīscitur. 2. Pepulerāmus; arbitrārī; arbitrāre; ūsūrus esse. 3. Caesar sē cum tribus legiōnibus secūtūrum (esse) dīxit. 4. Cōsul Rōmā profectus in fīnēs Helvētiōrum contendit. 5. Germānī ūsī esse parvīs equīs dicuntur. 6. Cōsul,

exercitū pulsō, ā cīvibus culpābitur. 7. Commeātus, quō nostrī ūtēbantur, multā nocte incēnsus est. 8. Gallī oppidum vāllō fossāque mūnīrī arbitrābantur. 9. Hostēs potīrī castrīs nōn posse dux vīdit. 10. Quattuor cohortēs praesidium castrīs Labiēnus reliquit.

II. 1. After encouraging his men, Caesar began the battle. 2. For many days the horsemen who¹ were following harassed the rear. 3. He will use these legions as a garrison. 4. Caesar set² out from the city, and began to wage war with the Helvetii. 5. It is reported that Labienus has routed the brave Gauls.

LESSON 57

Ferō AND fiō. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES

341. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of **ferō** (502) and **fiō** (501).

1. Review the conjugation of **faciō** (177-179), and note that **fiō** is used as the passive of **faciō**.

342. Examine the following :

1. **Nōbīs persūadent**, *they persuade us*.
2. **Imperātōrī pāret**, *he obeys the commander*.

Observe that **nōbīs** and **imperātōrī** are datives, while the corresponding English words are the objects of their verbs.

343. Rule of Syntax. — *Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries ; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

¹ *who were following* ; do not use a relative clause. ² Do not use the indicative.

344.

VOCABULARY

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, <i>bear, carry.</i>	fiō, fieri, factus sum, <i>become, be made.</i>
cōferō, cōferre, contuli, conlātus, <i>bring together, gather.</i>	persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsus, <i>persuade.</i>
nēmō, dat. nēminī (no gen. or abl.), <i>no one, nobody.</i>	pāreō, ēre, paruī, —, <i>obey.</i>
moror, āri, ātus sum, <i>delay, hinder.</i>	noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, <i>harm, injure.</i>
	crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditus, <i>believe, trust.</i>
	resistō, ere, restiti, —, <i>resist, oppose.</i>

345.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Nostri equitatum Gallorum tria millia passuum secuti pepulerunt. 2. Caesar certior factus est Gallōs ex vicō profectōs (esse). 3. Labiēnus urbe vāllō et fossā mūnita potitur. 4. Principēs Helvētiōrum suōs cohortāti nostrum impetum fortissimē sustinēbant. 5. Caesar suōs ex castris ēductōs instruī iubet.

II. 1. They informed us that the enemy were preparing to make an attack. 2. On leaving¹ the camp, our men crossed a river that was twenty feet wide. 3. After fortifying the camp, the Romans awaited their attack. 4. He said they ought to come to him.

346.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impedimentis in unum locum conlatis, nostri aciem instruxerunt. 2. Parere suo imperatori quisque debet. 3. Ad castra multos dies morati Galli domum se recepērunt. 4. Id² persuadere eis numquam poterimus. 5. Nemo ei haec dicenti credit. 6. Oppidum expugnari non poterat, quod

¹ On leaving = after leaving. ² Id is the direct object of persuadere. Translate: of this.

incolae nostris fortiter resistebant. 7. Boni libri nemini nocent. 8. Caesar litteris Labienii certior fiebat omnes Belgas (*Belgians*) contra populum Romanum coniurationem facere. 9. Quare (*therefore*) Caesar ad eos proficisci constituit. 10. Itaque re frumentaria comparata, castra movet, diebusque quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

II. 1. They inform Caesar ; Caesar is informed by them. 2. They said that a conspiracy was being formed. 3. No one could persuade him. 4. Children ought to obey their elders.¹ 5. I believe that they will resist us. 6. After fortifying the camp, Caesar encouraged his men.

LESSON 58

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VIII

CAESAR ERECTS FORTIFICATIONS. THE HELVETII ATTEMPT TO CROSS THE RHONE, BUT ARE REPELLED

347. Interea ea legione quam secum habebat militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant murum pedes sedecim altum et fossam a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, perducit. Eo opere perfecto et castellis munitis, facile eos prohibere potest. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum redierunt, negat² se posse iter ulli per provinciam dare. Helvetii autem, navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, perrumpere conati³ operis munitione⁴ et militum telis repulsi sunt.

¹ See 272. ² *negat se posse*, says he cannot (literally, denies that he can).

³ From *cōnor*, a deponent verb. ⁴ Can you not infer its meaning from the verb *mūniō*?

LESSON 59

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

348. Learn the present tense, active and passive, of the subjunctive of the model verbs of the four conjugations (491-495); of **sum** (496); of **possum** (497); of **eō** (500); of **ferō** (502); of **fiō** (501).

No meanings for the subjunctive are given, because the translations vary according to the construction used. These meanings will be understood as the various uses of the subjunctive are taken up in the succeeding lessons.

1. Compare carefully the forms of the present subjunctive of the third and fourth conjugations with those of the future indicative.
2. Notice that the personal endings are the same as in the indicative.
3. The following table will assist in fixing in mind the forms of the first person singular :

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE				
CONJUGATION	I	II	III	IV
ACTIVE	-em	-eam	-am, -iam	-iam
PASSIVE	-er	-ear	-ar, -iar	-iar

349. A sentence consisting of a main (or independent) clause and one or more dependent (or subordinate) clauses is called a complex sentence. In the following examples the dependent verbs are italicized :

When he *arrived* it was late.

He was so tired that he *went* to sleep.

He came that he *might see* me.

The common uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses will be considered in this lesson and those following. The uses of the subjunctive in independent clauses are treated in Lessons 67, 71, 72, 73.

350. Examine the following :

1. **Rōmam venit ut suum amicum videat**, *he comes to Rome that he may see his friend, in order that he may see his friend, in order to see his friend, to see his friend, for the purpose of seeing his friend.*
2. **Vir in urbem fugit nē interficiātur**, *the man flees into the city that he may not be killed, so that he may not be killed, in order not to be killed, lest he be killed.*
- a. Observe that the verbs of the dependent clauses **ut suum amicum videat** and **nē interficiātur** are subjunctive, and that they express the *purpose* of the action of the main clauses, **ut** (*that*) introducing affirmative and **nē** (*that . . . not*) negative clauses.
- b. Notice that the purpose clauses may be translated in a variety of ways. Purpose clauses may be translated by the English infinitive, but *never use the Latin infinitive to express purpose.*

351. **Rule of Syntax.** — *Purpose is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ne.*

352. Review the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs :

cōnficiō	dēdō	accēdō	proficīscor	ferō
committō	reddō	potior	ūtor	persuādeō
convertō	redeō	sequor	cadō	noceō
cohortor	redūcō	sciō	tollō	scribō
agō	reperiō	trādō	obsideō	arbitror
crēdō	laccessō	pellō	īnstruō	fiō

353.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Mulieribus liberisque in ūnum locum convocātis, Gallī impetum nostrōrum exspectāre cōstituunt. 2. Ubi Rōmānī ad eōrum finēs pervēnērunt, Gallī eis restitērunt. 3. Lēgātus suum cibum quemque portāre iubet. 4. Orgetorīgis filia ā Rōmānīs capta certior fiēbat nēminem sibi nocitūrum (esse). 5. Quis ūtī illō equō potuit?

II. 1. We are informed that Labienus has persuaded the Gauls. 2. On the next day the Romans will get possession of their camp. 3. He did not believe his father. 4. He did not believe his father would return.

354.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ad primum agmen proficiscitur ut suōs cohortētur. 2. Nostrī, signīs conversīs, pellere Gallōs coepērunt. 3. Lēgātum in Galliam proficiscī iubet nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia convocentur. 4. Ibi rēx paucōs diēs morātur ut oppidum obsideat. 5. Redīmus domum nē ab hostibus occidāmur. 6. Gallī magnās cōpiās ūnum in locum convocant ut bellum gerant. 7. Manēsne domī ut litterās paucās scribās? 8. Lēgātī in castra redeunt ut Caesarī persuādeant. 9. Nōs sequiminī ut aliquid reperiātis. 10. Arbitror Gallōs accēdere ut obsidēs redant.

II. 1. They are coming in order that they may be praised. 2. Caesar hurries into the province to wage war with the Gauls. 3. They are surrendering all their possessions to Caesar so as not to be killed. 4. We write many letters to persuade our friends. 5. He knew that they would not believe him. 6. You are waiting in Rome that you may not be conquered.

LESSON 60

SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED). IMPERFECT. RESULT CLAUSES

355. The first person singular of the imperfect subjunctive may be found by adding the personal endings **-m** (active), **-r** (passive), to the present active infinitive.

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

amāre

mūnīre

monēre

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

amārem

munīrer

monērem

1. Learn the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the four model verbs (491-495); of **sum** (496); of **possum** (497); of **eō** (500); of **ferō** (502).

356. Notice carefully the difference between a *purpose* and a *result* clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of the main verb. Observe the difference as shown in these examples :

They shouted so that he might hear. (Purpose.)

They shouted so that he heard. (Result.)

He was so tired that he could not go. (Result.)

Some word or phrase like *so, such, in such a way*, etc., is often used in the main clause to show that a result clause may be expected to follow.

357. Examine the following :

1. **Flūmen tam lātum est ut Galli trānsire nōn possint**, *the river is so wide that the Gauls cannot cross.*

2. Flūmen tam lātum fuit ut Galli trānsire nōn possent,
the river was so wide that the Gauls could not cross.
 3. Nostri ita fortiter pugnābant ut hostēs sē reciperent,
our men fought so bravely that the enemy retreated.
 4. Ita graviter vulnerāti erant ut pugnāre nōn possent,
they had been so severely wounded that they could not fight.
- a. Observe that the above clauses beginning with **ut** express the *result*, and that the verbs are *subjunctive*.
 - b. Observe that when the main verb is *present* tense the dependent subjunctive is *present* tense, and that when the main verb is either *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect* (*i.e.* any tense expressing past time), the dependent subjunctive is *imperfect*.
 - c. Observe that the tense of the subjunctive is not necessarily the same as that of the main verb.

358. Rule of Syntax. — *Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

359.

VOCABULARY

cōsequor, cōsequī, cōsecūtus sum, <i>pursue, overtake.</i>	castellum, ī, n., <i>fort, redoubt.</i>
prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, <i>advance, proceed.</i>	dēditio, ōnis, f., <i>surrender.</i>
audeō, ēre, ausus ¹ sum, <i>dare.</i>	calamitas, ātis, f., <i>disaster, defeat.</i>
accipio, ere, accēpī, acceptus, <i>receive.</i>	tantus, a, um, <i>so great, such.</i>
	tam, adv., <i>so.</i>
	ita, adv., <i>thus, so.</i>

¹ A semi-deponent verb; *i.e.* the present stem is active, and the perfect stem passive.

360.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī in Galliam trāseunt ut eōrum finēs vāstent. 2. Vicīs multīs et parvīs incēnsīs, Labiēnus urbem pulcherrimam obsidēbat. 3. Arbitrāmur nōs eōrum castrīs potirī posse. 4. Equitātus sociōrum Caesarī magnō ūsuī fuit. 5. Caesar ex castrīs profectus in Helvētiōs flūmen trāseuntēs impetum faciet.

II. 1. Each soldier ought to obey his general. 2. The enemy are following us to harass the rear. 3. You are doing this for the sake of harming me. 4. We are informed that the enemy have taken possession of the top of the hill.

361.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitātus prōgressus erat ut Gallōs fugientīs cōsequerētur. 2. Oppidum ita ā militibus mūnītur ut expugnārī nōn possit. 3. Omnēs quī trānsire Rhodanum ausī sunt tēlis et sagittīs vulnerābantur. 4. Tantus erat Helvētiōrum timor ut sē suaque omnia dēderent. 5. Caesar castra movet nē hostēs inter sē et flūmen sint. 6. Galli ita operis magnitūdine permovēbantur ut arma lēgātō trāderent. 7. Haec urbs castellīs mūnīta est nē ā Rōmānīs caperētur. 8. Haec urbs castellīs ita mūnīta est ut ā Rōmānīs nōn caperētur. 9. Labiēnus in eōrum finēs decem diēs prōgressus multās civitātēs in dēditionem accēpit. 10. Tantus hostium erat numerus ut sinistrum cornū circumvenīre possent.

II. 1. We shall never dare to do it on account of the width of the river. 2. The road is so narrow that the enemy cannot advance. 3. Such was the nature of the place that the road was very difficult. 4. We were sent to carry the children back to Rome. 5. The river was so wide and deep that they used ships.

LESSON 61

Volō. Nōlō. Mālō. RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

362. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, present and imperfect subjunctive, infinitive, and participle of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (499). Observe that **nōlō** is a compound of **nōn** and **volō**, and **mālō** a compound of **magis**, *more* (shortened to **ma**), and **volō**. Note the irregularities in the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive.

363. Examine the following :

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Princeps lēgātōs mīsit ut pācem peterent, | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the chief sent} \\ \text{ambassadors} \\ \text{to ask for} \\ \text{peace.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| 2. Princeps mīsit lēgātōs quī pācem peterent, | |

The English translation of these sentences is the same, and the verbs of the purpose clauses are subjunctive. In 2, however, **quī** is used instead of **ut** to emphasize the ambassadors as the persons who have the purpose to perform.

364. Rule of Syntax. — *Purpose may be expressed by a relative pronoun and the subjunctive.*

365.

VOCABULARY

petō, ere, petivī (iī), petitus, aim at, ask for, go to get.	praemittō, ere, praemisi, prae- missus, send ahead, dis- patch.
volō, velle, voluī, —, be will- ing, wish, will.	celeriter, adv. (celer, swift), swiftly, quickly.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be un- willing, will not.	senātus, ūs, m., senate.
mālō, mālle, māluī, —, be more willing, prefer.	dē tertiā vigiliā, about the third watch (a watch was equal to one fourth of the night).
impediō, ire, impedivī, impe- ditus, entangle, impede.	

366.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanum trānsierant nē ā Caesaris equitibus caperentur. 2. Nostri tam ācrit̄er pugnābant ut Helvētiī aliī aliam in partem fugerent. 3. Equitātus hostēs in fugam datōs cōsequī nōn audēbat. 4. Caesar dē Gallōrum dēditionē certior factus legiōnēs in hiberna redūxit. 5. Labiēnus sē nōn posse Gallīs crēdere arbitrābatur.

II. 1. That they might sustain our attack for a long time, the Gauls had gathered a great abundance of grain. 2. Such was the speed of our cavalry that the enemy could not escape. 3. We are informed that they will resist us. 4. Are you (plur.) returning to the city to warn your friends?

367.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōluisse; māvūltis; nolumus. 2. Māvīs; nōlēs; mālunt. 3. Imperātor mīlitēs praemīsīt quī castra pōnerent. 4. Gallī victī petere pācem nōlunt. 5. Multī esse cum Caesare quam Rōmam redīre mālēbant. 6. Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt ut iter per Sēquanōrum finēs facere possint. 7. Caesar equitēs quī Gallōs in flūmine impeditōs lacesserent praemīserat. 8. Germānī lēgātōs mīserunt quī dīxērunt¹ sē petere pācem velle. 9. Caesar hīs rebus ita permovēbātur ut quam celerrimē ad suōs contenderet. 10. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnus eōs quī hostēs cōsequerentur praemīsīt.

II. 1. We are unwilling to obey him. 2. Caesar sends ahead horsemen to burn the villages. 3. We are returning to Rome to persuade the senate. 4. The Helvetii

¹ Notice how the translation of the indicative, *dīxērunt*, differs from that of the subjunctive, *dīcerent*.

preferred to seek peace rather than to be killed by the Romans. 5. Why are you unwilling to remain at home? 6. Although¹ a great defeat had been received, the Gauls did not wish to surrender their arms.

LESSON 62

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

368. Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the model verbs (491-495); of **sum** (496); of **eō** (500); of **ferō** (502); of **possum** (497); of **fiō** (501); of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (499).

Observe that the first person of the perfect active subjunctive of all verbs may be found by adding **erim** to the perfect stem; that the pluperfect active subjunctive may be found by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive; that the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive are compound forms, like the same tenses of the indicative.

369. Examine the following :

DIRECT QUESTION

Ubi sunt? *where are they?*
Quid facit? *what is he doing?*

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō ubi sint, *I know where they are.*
Vidimus quid faceret, *we saw what he was doing.*

Observe that when a direct question is asked indirectly, depending upon some introductory verb, the verb of the original direct question becomes subjunctive in the indirect.

¹ See 311, 6; 315.

CAUTION. — Do not confuse an indirect question with an indirect statement (327). Indirect questions may be recognized by the fact that some interrogative word follows the main or introductory verb.

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō quis veniat,
I know who is coming.

INDIRECT STATEMENT

Sciō eum venīre,
I know (that) he is coming.

370. Rule of Syntax. — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

371. It has been noticed in the three preceding lessons that the tense of a dependent subjunctive depends upon the tense of the verb of the main clause. This use of the tenses follows a principle called the *Sequence of Tenses*, a principle that is familiar from English usage. Compare :

He comes that I may see him.

He came that I might see him.

The change from *may* to *might* accompanies the change of the main verb from *comes* to *came*. This change of tenses, therefore, is not peculiar to Latin.

372. All tenses are divided into two classes, as follows :

Primary or principal tenses, denoting present or future time.	{	Present Indicative, Future Indicative, Future Perfect Indicative, Present Subjunctive, Perfect Subjunctive.
---	---	---

Secondary or historical tenses, denoting past time.	{ Imperfect Indicative, Perfect Indicative, Pluperfect Indicative, Imperfect Subjunctive, Pluperfect Subjunctive.
--	---

373. Examine the following :

- | | | | | |
|----|---|--|---|---|
| 1. | { | Videt, <i>he sees,</i>
Vidēbit, <i>he will see,</i>
Viderit, <i>he will have seen,</i> | } | quid faciam, <i>what I am</i>
<i>doing.</i> |
| 2. | { | Videt, <i>he sees,</i>
Vidēbit, <i>he will see,</i>
Viderit, <i>he will have seen,</i> | } | quid fēcerim, <i>what I have</i>
<i>done (or did).</i> |
| 3. | { | Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing,</i>
Vidit, <i>he saw,</i>
Viderat, <i>he had seen,</i> | } | quid facerem, <i>what I was</i>
<i>doing.</i> |
| 4. | { | Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing,</i>
Vidit, <i>he saw,</i>
Viderat, <i>he had seen,</i> | } | quid fēcissem, <i>what I had</i>
<i>done (or did).</i> |

Observe what tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and what tenses follow secondary.

374. Rule for Sequence of Tenses. — Whenever the subjunctive is used in a dependent or subordinate clause, the tense that should be used is determined by the following rule :

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause ; a secondary tense is followed by a secondary tense.

1. Sometimes the perfect indicative, when it means *have*, *has*, . . ., is followed by a primary tense.

375.

VOCABULARY

prōcēdō, ere, processī, —, *go forward, advance.*

cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *try, attempt.*

conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum, *speak together, confer.*

in animō habeo, } *I have in*
mihi est in } *mind, in-*
animō, } *tend.*

explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*

in reliquum tempus, *for the future.*

inter sē dare, *to exchange, give each other.*

in flūmine pontem faciō, *build a bridge across the river.*

rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask, beg.*

376.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis Caesare imperātōre ē proeliō discēdere audēbit? 2. Cūr Rōmā exīre vultis? 3. Labiēnus cohortēs ex castrīs ēductās instruī iussit. 4. Caesarī est nūtiātum summum montem ā Labiēnō tenērī. 5. Ubi¹ ire mēcum māvis?

II. 1. He sent forward men to fortify the hill as quickly as possible. 2. The enemy hastened to attack our men while impeded in the river. 3. Are you willing to obey your leader? 4. After encouraging his men there Caesar hastens to the river.

377.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiīs est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. 2. Caesar rogāvit cur inter sē obsidēs darent. 3. Principēs ut dē dēditione conloquantur convenient. 4. Imperātor multōs diēs scīverat quae Gallī facere cōnātī essent. 5. Caesar praemittet eōs quī in flūmine pontem faciant. 6. Lēgātī Gallōrum Caesarī dixērunt quae sibi in animō in reliquum tempus essent. 7. Germānī ā Caesare rogāvērunt

¹ *When.*

“Cūr in nostrōs finēs prōcessistī?” 8. Germānī ā Caesare rogāvērunt cūr in suōs finēs prōcessisset. 9. Summus collis castellīs multīs mūnitus erat nē hostēs impetum facerent. 10. In animō habēmus obsidēs inter nōs dare.

II. 1. We know who is going to the city. 2. The lieutenant said, “Who is going to Rome?” 3. I know that they have returned home. 4. Caesar asked what towns they had captured. 5. We can see why they have fled. 6. Caesar is informed through scouts that the enemy have advanced. 7. When the battle had been fought, the general saw who had been wounded.



Pōns in flumine

LESSON 63

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

378. A substantive clause is one that is used as a noun. Its use as subject or object of a verb is most common. In the following English examples the substantive clauses are italicized :

- I know *what he has done*. (As object.)
 I know (*that*) *he has come*. (As object.)
 It happened *that he was present*. { (As subject, or in appo-
 sition with subject.)
 He persuaded us *to leave the city*. (As object.)
 We feared *that he might die*. (As object.)
 I do not doubt *that he will go*. (As object.)
 He ordered us *to leave the city*. (As object.)

It will be observed from these examples that substantive clauses are expressed in English in several ways. In Latin substantive clauses are usually expressed either by the infinitive or by the subjunctive. This use of the infinitive in indirect discourse and as complementary infinitive, and of the subjunctive in indirect questions, we have already considered.

379. Subjunctive clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē** are very often used in Latin as the object of verbs signifying to *ask, command, advise, resolve, urge, persuade, permit, strive, decree*. As an infinitive phrase is used in English as the object of such verbs, while **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive is used in Latin, this difference in usage must be carefully noted.

EXAMPLES

1. **Helvētiis persūasit ut exīrent**, *he persuaded the Helvetii to leave*.
2. **Suis imperat nē id faciant**, *he orders his men not to do this*.
3. **Militēs cohortātur ut impetum sustineant**, *he urges the soldiers to sustain the attack*.
4. **Tē rogō ut mihi crēdās**, *I ask you to believe me*.

380. The following are the most common verbs of the classes mentioned in 379. Their meanings and principal parts should be carefully learned :

persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsus, persuade.

imperō, āre, āvī, ātus, order, command.

mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, order, command.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, ask, beg.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, demand, ask.

moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, advise, warn.

petō, ēre, petivī (ii), petitus, ask, request.

quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, inquire, ask.

cohortor (and hortor), āri, ātus sum, encourage, urge.

permittō, ere, permisi, permissus, permit, allow.

concēdō, ere, concessi, concessus, permit, allow.

1. The following are exceptions to the above, and are followed by the infinitive, as in English :

iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus, order, command.

vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid.

2. The following are followed either by (1) the infinitive, or (2) **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive. Yet the infinitive is more common.

patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, allow.

cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus, determine.

cupiō, ere, cupivī, cupitus, desire.

volō (also nōlō and mālō), velle, voluī, wish.

381.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Sciō quid tibi sit in animō. 2. Lēgātī diū inter sē conlocutī domum rediērunt. 3. Ab eīs Caesar rogāvit cūr ex proeliō discessissent. 4. Helvētiī respondērunt sēsē exire ē finibus nōn cōnātūrōs. 5. Cūr hostēs sē recēpērunt ?

II. 1. I know whom you called together on that night.

2. If our arms are surrendered, we cannot defend ourselves.
3. They tried to keep the Germans away from their fields.
4. They thought we could not build a bridge over that river.

382.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar suis imperāvit ut castra mūnīrent. 2. Imperātor equitēs cohortātus est nē clāmōribus Gallōrum permoverentur. 3. Caesar, Helvētiis superātis, bellum gerere cum Germānis cōstituit. 4. Dumnorix Sēquanis persuādet nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 5. Helvētiī ē finitimīs quaesiverunt ut obsidēs inter sē darent. 6. Suōs in flūmine Rhodanō pontem facere lēgātus iussit. 7. Caesar Gallōs monuit nē coniūratiōnem in reliquum tempus facerent. 8. Gallī ut quisquam vīnō ūtātur nōn permittunt. 9. Ubi Caesar in Gallōrum finēs pervēnit, suōs vāstāre agrōs vetuit. 10. Nostrī magnum Gallōrum fugientium numerum occidērunt.

II. 1. We urge you to be brave. 2. The Helvetii persuaded their neighbors to attack the Romans. 3. The general commands¹ us to do this as quickly as possible. 4. We asked² him what he was doing. 5. He was informed that the enemy were crossing the river. 6. Now³ that the Germans have been conquered, Caesar will allow us to return to Rome. 7. They were sent to build a bridge.

LESSON 64

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IX

 DUMNORIX PERSUADES THE SEQUANI TO ALLOW THE
HELVETII TO MARCH THROUGH THEIR TERRITORY

383. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Cum⁴ hīs suā⁵

¹ imperō. ² Use rogō ab and ablative. ³ Now . . . conquered, use abl. abs. ⁴ since, when. ⁵ suā sponte, by their own means, on their own account.

sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō¹ dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.² Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex ea cīvitatē Orgetorīgis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque ut inter sēsē dent perficit : Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine iniuriā trāseant.

LESSON 65

OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING. **Cum**
TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE

384. Examine the following :

1. **Timeō nē hoc faciat**, *I fear that he will do this* (or *I fear that he is doing this*).
2. **Timēbam ut hoc faceret**, *I feared that he would not do this*.

Observe

- a. That the clauses **nē hoc faciat** and **ut hoc faceret** are the object of the main verb.
- b. That **nē** is *affirmative* and means *that*, and that **ut** is *negative* and means *that not*.

385. **Rule of Syntax.** — *The subjunctive with nē, that, or ut, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing.*

386. Examine the following :

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit**, *when Caesar came into Gaul*.
2. **Cum Caesar in Galliā esset**, *when Caesar was in Gaul*.

¹ eō dēprecātōre, *by his mediation* (literally, *he (being) an intercessor*; ablative absolute). ² Do not confuse this verb with **imperō**.

3. **Cum** **Caesarī** **id** **nūntiātum** **esset**, *when this had been reported to Caesar.*
4. **Cum** **his** **persuādere** **nōn** **possent**, **lēgātōs** **misērunt**, *since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.*
5. **Cum** **prīmī** **ōrdinēs** **concidissent**, **reliquī** **tamen** **resistēbant**, *although the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted.*

Cum, meaning *when* (sentences 1, 2, 3), is called **cum** *temporal*, and the verb is usually subjunctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect, otherwise the indicative is used. **Cum**, meaning *since* or *as*, is called **cum** *causal*, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 4). **Cum**, meaning *although*, is called **cum** *concessive*, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 5). The student will be able to infer from the meaning of the whole sentence which of the three translations **cum** should have in a given case. What must it mean with the indicative?

387. Rules of Syntax.

1. In a **cum** clause expressing time, the verb is usually subjunctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used.

2. In a **cum** clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive.

388.

VOCABULARY

vereor, ērī, veritus sum, *fear, respect.*

timeō, ēre, timuī, —, *fear, be afraid of.*

intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus, *learn, know, perceive.*

signa inferō, *charge (literally, bear the standards against).*

in fidem venire, *to put one's self under the protection.*

postquam, conj., *after.*

polliceor, ērī, pollicitus sum. *promise.*

389.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar quibusdam ē suis imperāvit ut in flūmine pontem facerent. 2. Imperātor Helvētiis nē iter per prōvinciam faciant mandat. 3. Germānī ā Caesare quaesivērunt cūr in Galliam vēnisset. 4. Caesar per explorātōrēs certior fit summum montem ā Labiēno occupātum esse. 5. Helvētiī finitimīs persuādēbant ut, aedificiīs incēnsīs, sēcum exirent.

II. 1. He warns us not to leave the camp. 2. The Gauls urged each man to resist the Romans bravely. 3. We shall attack the enemy who are following. 4. Caesar ordered¹ the Gauls to give up their arms.

390.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Postquam Caesar ad exercitum pervēnit, militēs castra mūnīre coepērunt. 2. Cum hoc fēcērīmus, tamen ā nostrīs amicīs nōn culpābimur. 3. Imperātor verēbātur nē hostēs nostrōs in flūmine impeditōs lacesserent. 4. Cum nostrī fortiter resisterent, Gallī sē recipere cōstituērunt. 5. Helvētiī superātī in Caesaris fidem venīre volēbant. 6. Caesar, cum suōs labōrāre intellegeret, in prīmam aciem prōcessit, et militēs cohortātus est. 7. Cum hoc fēcissent, Rōmam rediērunt. 8. Hōc factō, Rōmam rediērunt. 9. Gallī pollicitī sunt sē sociōrum populī Rōmānī agrōs nōn vāstātūrōs esse. 10. Caesar suōs sīgna conversa inferre iussit.

II. 1. We feared that the general would not send us aid. 2. Although² the enemy resisted bravely, our men were able to take the town. 3. When Caesar was informed of their arrival, he drew up the line of battle.

¹ Use *iubeō*. ² *Although . . . resisted*. Express in two ways. See 311. 6, 315, 386. 5.

4. I fear that he is coming. 5. I know that he is coming.
6. I know who is coming. 7. The man that I saw in Rome
has arrived.

LESSON 66

COMPOUNDS OF **sum**. DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS

391. Review **possum** (274). The verb **sum** is compounded with the prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **prae**, **prō** (**prod**), **super**. Review the meanings of these prepositions from the general vocabulary. In the compound **prōsum**, *I benefit*, **prōd**, not **prō**, is found before **e**. Learn the conjugation of **prōsum** (498).

392. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of **sum**:

absum, **abesse**, **āfuī**, —, *be away, be absent.*

adsum, **adesse**, **adfui**, —, *be present, aid.*

dēsum, **dēesse**, **dēfuī**, —, *be lacking, fail.*

insum, **inesse**, **īfuī**, —, *be in, be among.*

intersum, **interesse**, **interfuī**, —, *be among, be present.*

obsum, **obesse**, **obfuī**, —, *be against, injure.*

praesum, **praeesse**, **praefuī**, —, *be at the head of, command.*

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **profuī**, —, *be of use to, benefit.*

supersum, **superesse**, **superfuī**, —, *be over, survive.*

393. Examine the following:

1. **Lēgātus oppidō praefuit**, *the lieutenant was in charge of the town.*
2. **Amicis prōsumus**, *we benefit our friends.*
3. **Exercitus hostibus appropinquābat** (**ad** + **propinquō**), *the army was approaching the enemy.*
4. **Pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit**, *he put honor before money.*

Observe that these compound verbs govern the dative case. If a verb is transitive, as in 4, it may take both an accusative and a dative.

394. Rule of Syntax.—*Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super often govern the dative.*

395.

VOCABULARY

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus,	vīs (no gen. or dat. sing.),
<i>approach, draw near.</i>	vim, vī, (476) f., plur.,
bellum inferō, inferre, intuli,	virēs, ium, ibus, <i>strength,</i>
inlātus, and dative, <i>wage</i>	<i>power; (plur.), strength.</i>
<i>war upon.</i>	iterum, adv., <i>again, a second</i>
	<i>time.</i>

396.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Verēmur ut impetum sustineant. 2. Gallī sē in populī Rōmānī fidem ventūrōs pollicentur. 3. Postquam Caesar in Galliam vēnit, gentēs obsidēs inter sē dare intellexit. 4. Quae¹ cum ita sint, in hostium fīnibus morābimur.

II. 1. The Gauls feared that the Romans would advance. 2. The Gauls thought that the Romans were advancing. 3. The camp that had been fortified was a mile wide. 4. They persuaded the Sequani to exchange hostages.

397.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar cum fīnibus Gallōrum appropinquāret, magnā cum cūrā prōcessit. 2. Peditēs diū pugnāre nōn poterant, quod sibi virēs dēerant. 3. Germānī dīxērunt

¹ *these things.* A relative at the beginning of a sentence is often translated by a demonstrative.

Rōmānōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Virī quī suīs amicīs obsunt nōn sunt fidī. 5. Gallī mulierēs liberōsque ūnum in locum convocābant nē tēlīs interficerentur. 6. Caesar Labiēnum quī castrīs praeesset reliquit. 7. Incolae oppidī, armīs trāditīs, tamen Rōmānīs resistere iterum cōnātī sunt. 8. Cum lēgātus ā hostium finibus nōn amplius¹ duōbus mīllibus passuum abesset, castra posuit. 9. Omnēs quī pugnae superfuerant ā Caesare pācem petēbant. 10. Cum oppidī incolae paucī essent, expugnārī nōn potuit.

II. 1. We all wish to benefit our friends. 2. Labienus commanded two legions. 3. Caesar said he intended to wage war on the Germans. 4. We persuaded them to leave Rome with us. 5. Although we are drawing near the enemy, we ought not to fear, if² Caesar is general. 6. Caesar called all the soldiers together.

LESSON 67

THE IMPERATIVE. COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS

398.

FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

SECOND PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
IMPERATIVE ACTIVE		IMPERATIVE PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
amā, <i>love</i>	amāte	amāre, <i>be loved</i>	amāminī
monē, <i>advise</i>	monēte	monēre, <i>be advised</i>	monēminī
mitte, <i>send</i>	mittite	mittere, <i>be sent</i>	mittiminī
cape, <i>take</i>	capite	capere, <i>be taken</i>	capiminī
audī, <i>hear</i>	audīte	audire, <i>be heard</i>	audiminī

¹ more.

² if . . . general: see 316.

Observe that the present active imperative has the same form as the *present stem* (86), and that the present passive imperative, singular and plural, have the same forms as the *second person singular in -re* and the *second person plural of the present indicative passive*.

The present active imperatives of *dīcō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō* are *dīc, dūc, fac, fer*.

Give the imperative forms of *gerō, videō, dīcō, mūniō, capiō, sequor, laudō*.

399. The imperative is used to command or exhort in the *second person*, while the subjunctive is used to exhort or urge in the *first and third persons*. For example :

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
1ST PER. <i>laudem, let me praise</i>	nē <i>laudem, let me not praise</i>
2D PER. <i>laudā, praise</i>	nōlī <i>laudāre, do not praise</i>
3D PER. <i>laudet, let him praise</i>	nē <i>laudet, let him not praise</i>
1ST PER. <i>laudēmus, let us praise</i>	nē <i>laudēmus, let us not praise</i>
2D PER. <i>laudāte, praise</i>	nōlīte <i>laudāre, do not praise</i>
3D PER. <i>laudent, let them praise</i>	nē <i>laudent, let them not praise</i>

Observe that the negative used with the subjunctive is *nē*, but that *nē* is *not* used with the imperative, but instead *nōlī* or *nōlīte* (pres. imperative of *nōlō, be unwilling*) and the infinitive. Do not use *nē* or *nōn* with the imperative to express a negative command.

400.

VOCABULARY

praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, prae-
fectus, set over, put in
charge of.

referō, referre, rettulī, relā-
tus, carry back; referre
pedem, to retreat.

ad multam noctem, till late
at night.

longē, adv., far, far off.

revertō, ere, revertī, —, and
revertor, revertī, reversus

sum, dep., turn back, re-
turn.

animadvertō, ere, animad-
vertī, animadversus (ani-
mus + ad + vertō), turn the
mind to, notice, punish.

adversus, a, um, opposite,
facing, hostile; adversō
colle, up the hill.

Ariovistus, ī, m., Ariovistus,
chief of the Germans.

401.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Illud oppidum nōn longē ā prōvinciā abest.
2. Hostium cōpiaē cōnātae sunt castellum, cui praeerat
lēgātus, expugnāre. 3. Ariovistus dixit nōn sēsē Gallīs
sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Labiēnus, ūnus ex
Caesaris lēgātīs, oppidō appropinquāre contendit. 5. Cum
proelī fīnem nox fēcisset, virī summā grātiā apud suōs ad
Caesarem vēnērunt.

II. 1. The chief had two daughters; one was killed, the
other captured. 2. I fear that he will injure me. 3. The
man did this himself. 4. The chief said, "The power of
the Roman people is very great."

402.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī respondērunt, "Nōlite Rōmānīs bellum in-
ferre." 2. Dīc mihi quid in animō vōbīs sit. 3. Fortiter
pugnēmus¹ nē sub potestāte Caesaris veniāmus. 4. Caesar

¹ Notice that the subjunctive of exhortation is the main verb of the sentence.
See 349.

cum Gallōs iterum coniūrātiōnem facere animadvertisset, lēgātōs ad sē revertī iussit. 5. Cum vīrēs sibi dēessent, hostēs referre pedem coepērunt. 6. Sīgna īnferte adversō colle ad hostium castra. 7. Labiēnum urbī captae Caesar praefēcit. 8. Cum nostrī ad multam noctem contendissent, nēmō ab hostibus occīsus est. 9. Ariovistus Caesarī dīxit, “Cūr in meōs finēs venīs?” 10. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē Caesar cōstituit.

II. 1. Let us wage war. 2. Do not do this. 3. Pursue the enemy, if you wish. 4. Let them do this. 5. Labienus,¹ lead the forces out of camp. 6. Friends, do not persuade me to remain in Rome. 7. We were afraid that our men would not be able to seize the top of the mountain.

LESSON 68

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

403. Carefully distinguish the difference in English between a verbal noun and a verbal adjective. They both end in *-ing*, the verbal noun being used like a noun in any of the cases, and the verbal adjective, or participle, like an adjective, always in agreement with some word. Both have the force of a verb, and may therefore take an object. Compare these examples :

I found my friends *waiting* for me. (Participle, or verbal adjective.)

Waiting is tedious. (Verbal noun, subject of “is.”)

We learn to do by *doing*. (Verbal noun.)

404. In Latin, the *gerund* is a verbal noun. It has only the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases, the

¹ Review 29, I. 52, 2.

nominative case being supplied by the infinitive. Its gender is neuter. *The gerundive is a verbal adjective* (see 308), and is passive in its meaning.

405. Learn the gerunds and gerundives of the model verbs (491-495). Note that they are formed from the present stem.

406. Examine the following :

NOM.	{ Vidēre est crēdere , <i>seeing is believing</i> (infinitive as subject).
GEN.	{ Ars vivendī (gerund), <i>the art of living</i> . Vēnit amicōrum videndōrum causā (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the sake of seeing his friends)</i> .
DAT. ¹	{ Vix his rēbus administrandīs tempus dabātur (gerundive), <i>time was hardly given for managing these things</i> .
ACC.	{ Vēnit ad pugnandum (gerund), <i>he came to fight (for fighting, or for the purpose of fighting)</i> . Vēnit ad amicōs videndōs (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the purpose of seeing his friends)</i> .
ABL.	{ Mēns discendō alitur (gerund), <i>the mind is strengthened by learning</i> . Conlocūtī sunt dē cōsiliis faciendīs (gerundive), <i>they conferred about forming plans</i> .

Observe

1. That when the gerundive is used the noun is put in the proper case, and the gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

¹ The use of the dative of the gerund or gerundive is not very common ; **ad** and the accusative is more common.

2. That the gerundive is generally used instead of the gerund when there is an object.
3. That purpose may be expressed by **ad** and the accusative of the gerund or gerundive, and by **causā** following the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. What other ways are there of expressing purpose?

407.

VOCABULARY

coniciō, ere, coniecti, coniectus,	causa, ae, f., <i>cause, reason</i> ;
<i>throw, hurl.</i>	abl., <i>for the sake</i> (after a
dēligō, ere, dēlēgi, dēlēctus,	genitive).
<i>select, choose.</i>	cupidus, a, um, <i>desirous of,</i>
spatium, i, n., <i>space, time,</i>	<i>cager for</i> (with genitive).
<i>opportunity.</i>	dēnique, adv., <i>finally, at last.</i>
	iam, adv., <i>now, already, soon.</i>

408.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Animadvertite quae fēcerit. 2. Nōlī, hostibus appropinquantibus, castris lēgātum praeficere. 3. Omnibus Gallis superātis, in prōvinciam revertāmur. 4. Ubi turrim mōvēri et appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt. 5. Dic nōbīs quōs Rōmae vīderis.

II. 1. Do not persuade them to wage war on the Romans. 2. Lead your troops out of camp and draw them up. 3. Let us always obey the general. 4. I fear the Gauls will be defeated.

409.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Discimus agere agendō. 2. Lēgātus finem loquendī fēcit. 3. Militēs erant cupidī potiendī oppidī. 4. Bellum gerere hieme est difficillimum. 5. Hostēs tam celeriter accessērunt ut spatium tēlōrum coniciendōrum nōn darētur. 6. Caesar locum omnibus rēbus idōneum castris dēlēgit. 7. Lēgātī ad pācem petendam vērērunt. 8. Com-

plūrēs prīncipēs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā vēnērunt. 9. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās annum satis esse Helvētīi arbitrābantur. 10. Galli dē bellō Rōmānis īferendō cōsilia faciēbant. 11. Nē nōs ē proeliō discedāmus.

II. 1. Fighting; by fighting; of fighting. 2. For the purpose of defending; for the sake of choosing. 3. Time was not given for¹ defending the city. 4. Caesar sent men to² fortify the camp. 5. The enemy attacked our men while crossing the river. 6. He chose a lieutenant to accomplish all these things. 7. Choosing good friends is difficult. 8. Do not leave the city.

LESSON 69

COMPLETE REVIEW OF VERB FORMS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—As much time should be given to this review of verb forms as the needs of the class require. It is suggested that this review be made by synopsis, and by quick recognition of miscellaneous verb forms both orally and in writing.

410. Review 235 and 352. Review the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs :

timeō	prōcēdō	coniciō	imperō
appropinquō	petō	dēligō	pāreō
intellegō	permittō	animadvertō	quaerō
polliceor	volō	revertō	cōsequor
conloquor	nōlō	moror	audeō
vereor	mālō	obtineō	prōgredior
cōnor	respondeō	praefficiō	

411. Following the form suggested below, write the synopsis of (1) *tollō* in the first person singular, and of (2) *cōnor* in the third person plural.

¹ for *defending*: genitive case.

² to *fortify*: express in four ways.

FORM¹ FOR SYNOPSIS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

TENSE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. { Act. Pass.					
Imper. { Act. Pass.					
Fut. { Act. Pass.					
Perf. { Act. Pass.					
Plup. { Act. Pass.					
Fut. { Act. Perf. { Pass.					

LESSON 70

READING LESSON

CHAPTER X

CAESAR PREPARES TO DEFEAT THE PLANS OF THE
HELVETII

412. Caesarī renūtiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs

¹ This form is merely suggested as a model for writing the synopsis of a verb.

facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolosātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Caesar nōlēbat hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, prōvinciae esse finitimōs. Ob eās rēs eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum prae-fēcit, et ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hie-mābant,¹ ex hibernīs ēdūcit et cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire in ulteriōrem Galliā contendit. Ibi nōnnūllae nātiōnēs, locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs complūribus proeliīs² pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē² septimō pervēnit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

¹ Can you not infer its meaning from **hiems** ?

² Why ablative ?



Roman Harbor and Ships (Restoration)

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — These lessons are designed to meet the needs of those classes that wish a more extensive treatment of syntax than has been attempted in the previous lessons. They are so arranged that they may be taken up in connection with the previous lessons, or in any order that the teacher wishes.

LESSON 71

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. PRESENT AND PAST TIME

413. Conditional sentences are complex sentences. They consist of two clauses, the *condition* (or protasis) introduced by “if,” “if not,” “unless,” and the *conclusion* (or apodosis). For example :

If it rains, I shall not go.

If he had not seen me, I should have gone.

You will not do this unless I command you.

Observe that a condition may be expressed in English without using “if,” “if not,” “unless,” by merely placing the subject after the verb in the condition. For example :

Had he not seen me, I should have gone.

414. Various classifications of conditional sentences are possible, but for convenience they will be considered as follows :

I. Conditions referring to *present* or *past* time.

1. Simple.

2. Contrary to Fact.

II. Conditions referring to *future* time.

1. Vivid Future.
2. Less Vivid Future.

415.

SIMPLE CONDITION

Examine the following :

1. **Sī hoc faciunt, bene est**, *if they are doing this, it is well.*
2. **Sī hoc fēcērunt, bene fuit**, *if they did this, it was well.*

Observe

- a. That the condition (or protasis) does not imply whether the statement is true or not, *i.e.* whether “they did this” or not ; it *merely makes a supposition.*
- b. That the present or past tenses of the indicative are used in both condition and conclusion.

416.

CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

1. **Sī hoc facerent, bene esset**, *if they were (now) doing this, it would be well.*
2. **Sī hoc fēcissent, bene fuisset**, *if they had done this, it would have been well.*

Observe

- a. That the condition (or protasis) makes a supposition that is obviously contrary to the actual facts of the case ; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that they are *not* now doing this, and the second sentence, that they had not done this.
- b. That the *imperfect subjunctive* is used in both condition and conclusion, when the time is present, and the *pluperfect subjunctive*, when the time is past.

417.

EXERCISES

(In these and the succeeding exercises, the student should use the general vocabularies whenever it is necessary.)

I. 1. *Sī meus amīcus Rōmae est, laetus sum.* 2. *Sī Helvētīi ācrius Rōmānīs restitissent, nōn victī essent.* 3. *Sī adesset, exīre Rōmā parātī essēmus.* 4. *Laetus fuit pater, sī quis liberōs laudāvit.* 5. *Caesar, sī accēdere hostēs arbitrātus esset, aciem instrūxisset.* 6. *Plūrēs Gallōrum occīsī essent, sī nostrī celerius cōsecūtī essent.* 7. *Sī imperātor essēs, darēsne proelī committendī sīgnum?*

II. 1. If they had been at home, I should have been glad. 2. I am glad, if they are at home. 3. If anything happened, it was reported to the general. 4. That soldier would leave the battle, if he were not a brave man. 5. Who would not have done the same thing, had he been present? 6. If the general commands, the soldiers obey him. 7. If you were in Rome, should you wish to be a soldier?

LESSON 72

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (CONTINUED). FUTURE TIME

418.

VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

Sī hoc facient, bene erit, if they do this (i.e. will do this), it will be well.

Observe

- a. That the condition (or protasis) states a future supposition vividly or strongly (*i.e.* by using "will").
- b. That the future indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.

- c. That the present tense in English may often refer to future time (*i.e.* "if they do this" means "if they will do this").

419. LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

Sī hoc faciant, bene sit, *if they should do this, it would be well.*

Observe

- a. That the condition (or protasis) here states a future supposition in a less distinct and vivid fashion (*i.e.* by using "should" or "would").
- b. That the present subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion.

420. SUMMARY OF CONDITIONS

Classes of
Conditional
Sentences

I. Present or Past Time.

1. Simple. Present or past tenses of the indicative in both parts.
2. Contrary to Fact.
 - a. Present time — imperfect subjunctive in both parts.
 - b. Past time — pluperfect subjunctive in both parts.

II. Future Time.

1. Vivid Future — Future indicative in both parts.
2. Less Vivid Future — Present subjunctive in both parts.

421. It has been explained in 311, 5, 315, 2, and 316 that the condition (or protasis) may be expressed by the participle without the use of **sī** or **nisi**. For example :

Prīcipēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur, *the chiefs of the Gauls, if they are conquered (literally, having been conquered), will be sent to Rome.*

422.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sī equitēs cōsequentur, magnum hostium numerum occident. 2. Sī equitēs cōsequantur, magnum hostium numerum occīdant. 3. Caesare imperātōre, numquam terrebimur. 4. Helvētiī flūmen Rhodanum trānsiissent, nisi Caesar in Galliam contendisset. 5. Obsidēs liberātī domum redeant. 6. Incolae, armīs trāditīs, sēsē dēfendere nōn poterunt. 7. Sī hostēs flūmen trāseant, nostrī nōn cōsequantur.

II. 1. If we should go to Athens, we should see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we go to Athens, we shall see many beautiful buildings. 3. Had the Helvetii tried to cross the river, Caesar would have prohibited them. 4. If Labienus hurries, he will be able to seize the top of the hill. 5. If Caesar should attack that town, the inhabitants would not be able to defend it. 6. If you were in the town, you would be alarmed at Caesar's approach. 7. Who will be afraid, if the town has been well fortified?

LESSON 73

WISHES

423. Wishes may be divided into two classes :

I. Those that refer to the future, and express a desire for something that is *possible*. For example :

May my friend come !

Would that my friend would come !

O that my friend would come !

Observe that the above expressions are different ways of expressing the same desire.

II. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are, therefore, sometimes called hopeless wishes. For example :

O that my friend were here !	} referring to present time, and implying that he is not here.
I wish (that) my friend were here !	
Would that my friend were here !	
O that my friend had been here !	} referring to past time, and implying that he was not here.
I wish (that) my friend had been here !	
Would that my friend had been here !	

424. Examine the following :

1. **Utinam meus amicus veniat**, *may my friend come !* (possible).
2. **Utinam meus amicus adesset**, *would that my friend were here !* (hopeless in present time, implying that he is not here).
3. **Utinam meus amicus adfuisset**, *O that my friend had been here !* (hopeless in past time, implying that he was not here).

Observe

- a. That the subjunctive is used to express a wish.
- b. That the present subjunctive expresses a wish that is possible, and that the imperfect subjunctive expresses a wish that is hopeless in present time, and the pluperfect in past time.
- c. That hopeless wishes employ the same mood and tenses as contrary-to-fact conditions (416).

Utinam is often omitted with the present tense, but is regularly used with the imperfect or pluperfect. The negative is **nē**.

425. Rule of Syntax. — *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive, with or without utinam.*

426.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Utinam nē Gallī coniūrātiōnem fēcissent! 2. Miles ē proeliō nē discēdat! 3. Utinam hoc facerent! 4. Helvētīi dixērunt, "Utinam nē altissimīs montibus continērēmur!" 5. Utinam nē Germānī populō Rōmānō bellum intulissent! 6. Utinam Rōmam veniāmus!

II. 1. May he always obey the general! 2. I wish we had gone to Athens! 3. Would that we were with Caesar in Gaul! 4. O that he had not persuaded me! 5. May we be killed, if¹ we surrender our arms! 6. Would that we were able to go with you!

LESSON 74**INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COMPLEX SENTENCES**

427. Review 327–330, 349. When a complex sentence is quoted indirectly, its principal or main verb follows the rule stated in 329. Its dependent verb follows this law:

Each dependent verb becomes subjunctive. Its tense depends upon the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, etc., in accordance with the principle of sequence of tenses (374).

428. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns of the first and

¹ if we . . . arms: see 315, 2.

second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person. The reflexive pronouns refer sometimes to the subject of the introductory verb, and sometimes to the subject of the verb of their own clause.

429. Examine the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Vir quem vidēo meus amicus
est, the man whom I see is
my friend.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Present Time

Dīcit virum quem videat suum
amicum esse, *he says that*
the man whom he sees is
his friend.

Past Time

Dixit virum quem vidēret
suum amicum esse, *he*
said that the man whom
he saw was his friend.

Observe

- a. That the main verb **est** becomes **esse** with its subject **virum** in the accusative.
- b. That the dependent (or subordinate) verb **vidēo** becomes present subjunctive, **videat**, when the introductory verb, **dīcit**, is a primary tense, and imperfect subjunctive, **vidēret**, when the introductory verb, **dixit**, is a secondary tense.
- c. That the person of the dependent verb changes to the third person, and that **meus** becomes **suum**, because it refers to the subject of the introductory verb.

430. Rule of Syntax. — *In indirect discourse the main verbs are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive.*

431.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mīlitēs quōs mēcum habuī fortissimī fuērunt.
 2. Dīxit mīlitēs quōs sēcum habuisset fortissimōs fuisse.
 3. Ubi ad nostrum exercitum pervēnimus, mīlitēs castra mūniēbant. 4. Dīcunt mīlitēs, ubi ad suum exercitum pervēnerint, castra mūnivisse. 5. Caesar dīxit suōs flūmen, quod¹ altissimum esset, trānsīre nōn posse. 6. Ariovistus Caesarī dīxit, “Volō dē hīs rēbus, quae inter nōs agī² coeptae neque perfectae sunt, agere² tēcum.” 7. Ariovistus Caesarī dīxit sē velle dē hīs rebus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō.

II. 1. The river that we see is very wide. 2. They said that the river that they saw was very wide. 3. The lieutenant is frightened because the enemy are approaching. 4. Write 3 indirectly in Latin after **audiō**. 5. When I arrived, I saw my friend. 6. Write 5 indirectly in Latin after **dīxit**. 7. Ariovistus replied that those who have conquered ought to rule³ those whom they have conquered.

LESSON 75

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS. SUPINE. DIFFERENT
WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

432. Verbs are said to be used impersonally when they do not have a personal subject. This impersonal use is more common in Latin than in English. There are some verbs in Latin that are used only impersonally, while others are used both personally and impersonally.

EXAMPLES

Ācriter pugnātum est, *the battle was fought sharply, or there was sharp fighting* (literally, *it was sharply fought*).

¹ because.² ago, treat.³ imperō.

Vōs hoc facere oportet, *you ought to do this* (literally, *it is proper that you do this*).

Vōbis hoc facere licet, *you may do this* (literally, *it is permitted to you to do this*).

433. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, and has forms only in **-um** and **-ū**. These forms are used only in the following constructions :

Lēgātī vēnērunt Caesarem grātulātum, *ambassadors came to congratulate Caesar*.

Hoc difficile est factū, *this is difficult to do*.

The supine in **-um** is used to express purpose only after verbs of motion, and the supine in **-ū** is used with a few adjectives and indeclinable nouns.

434. VARIOUS WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

Review 351, 364, 406, 3. Are there several ways of expressing purpose in English ?

EXAMPLES

Helvētīī lēgātōs mīsērunt	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ut pācem peterent,} \\ \text{quī pācem peterent,} \\ \text{pācis petendae causā,} \\ \text{ad pācem petendam,} \\ \text{pācem petitum,} \end{array} \right.$	<i>the Helvetii sent ambassadors to seek peace.</i>
Militēs mittuntur	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ad pugnandum,} \\ \text{pugnandī causā,} \end{array} \right.$	<i>the soldiers are sent to fight.</i>

435. Rule of Syntax. — *The supine in -um is used to express purpose after verbs of motion.*

436.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc est mīrābile dictū. 2. Ariovistus respondit, "Tē ad mē venīre oportet." 3. Prīncipēs Gallōrum ad

Caesarem vērunt auxilium petītum. 4. Sī volunt, eīs ex oppidō exīre licet. 5. In utram partem¹ flūmen Arar fluat oculīs iūdicārī nōn potest. 6. Helvētīi rogant ut iter per prōvinciam sibi facere liceat. 7. Gallī coniūrātiōnem facere dīcuntur. 8. Gallōs coniūrātiōnem facere dīcitur.²

II. 1. He went to Rome to³ see his daughters. 2. This is easier to say than to do. 3. We ought to obey the general. 4. There is sharp fighting on the right wing. 5. The soldiers may go to Rome. 6. It was reported that the enemy were returning home.

LESSON 76

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

437. The first or active periphrastic conjugation is formed by the future active participle and verb **sum**. It is future in its meaning, and expresses the idea conveyed in English by the phrases "about to," "going to," "intend to." For example :

Laudātūrus est, *he is about to praise, or is going to praise, or intends to praise.*

For all forms of this conjugation, see 504.

It has been noticed that there is no future or future perfect tense in the subjunctive. The subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation may be used in their place. For example :

Sciō quem visūrus sit, *I know whom he is going to see, or whom he will see.*

438. The second or passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by the gerundive and the verb **sum**. It is passive

¹ direction, ² it is said, ³ to . . . daughters : express in four ways.

in its meaning, and expresses the idea of *obligation or necessity*. For example :

Laudandus est, *he ought to be praised, or he must be praised* (literally, *he is to be praised*).

For all forms of this conjugation, see 505.

439. USES OF THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

1. The person for whom the obligation or necessity exists is expressed by the dative.
2. Since the conjugation is passive, all active English sentences must be recast before they are the equivalent literally of this Latin construction. Thus: "I must do this" = "For me this is to be done," **id mihi agendum est**.
3. Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in this conjugation in Latin. Thus: "We ought to come," **nōbis veniendum est**.

EXAMPLES

Urbs est mūnienda, *the city must be fortified*.

Nōbis fortiter pugnandum est, *we ought to (or must) fight bravely* (literally, *for us it is to be fought bravely*).

Caesarī omnia erant agenda, *Caesar had to do everything* (literally, *for Caesar everything was to be done*).

440.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Visūrī erāmus; amātūra fuit; monitūrae erant.
2. Nōbis cum Gallis bellum gerendum est. 3. Incolae oppidī ēruptionem erant factūrī. 4. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant; aciēs instruenda, signum dandum, militēs ab opere revocandī erant. 5. Sī victūrī sumus, nōbis fortissimē contendendum erit. 6. Sciēbam quid vōs factūrī

essētis. 7. Sciēbam quid vōs facerētis. 8. Incolīs quīnque diēs oppidum dēfendendum fuit.

II. 1. We intend to go to Rome. 2. They were about to fortify the top of the hill. 3. They must fortify the camp. 4. It was reported to Caesar that the Gauls were about to attack him. 5. We ought to hurry to the city. 6. Labienus had to cross the river. 7. Caesar asked who was going to remain with him. 8. The ambassadors will have to answer.

SELECTIONS FOR READING

STORIES¹ FROM ROMAN HISTORY

441. EARLY BOYHOOD OF ROMULUS AND REMUS

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnūm reliquit; sed Amūlius, pulsō² frātre, rēgnāvit et Rhēam Silviam, eius filiā, Vestae sacerdotem fēcit, quae³ tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Quārē Amūlius ipsam in vincula⁵ coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs⁴ abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpās erat effūsus; sed, relābente flūmine, eōs aqua in siccō reliquit. Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitudinēs erant. Lupa ad vāgītum accurrit, mātremque⁵ sē gessit.

10

Cum lupa saepius⁶ ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverterētur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dedit. Adultī⁷ deinde hī inter pāstōrēs primō lūdīcrīs⁸ certāminibus vīrēs⁹ auxērunt, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā 15

¹ These stories are from the traditional accounts of Rome's early history. Little faith should be put in them as a true historical record, at least as far as details are concerned. ² **pulsō** (**pellō**) **frātre**, abl. absolute, *after he had driven out his brother*. ³ *but she*. ⁴ See 311, 7. **impositōs abiēcit**: translate as if they were two coördinated verbs, **imposuit et abiēcit**. ⁵ **mātremque sē gessit**, *acted like a mother*. ⁶ *very often*. ⁷ **adultī** (**adolēscō**), *when grown* (literally, *having grown*). ⁸ **lūdīcrīs certāminibus**, *with playful contests*.

⁹ From **vīs**; do not confuse with **vīr**, **vīrī**.

pecoribus arcēre coepērunt. Quārē cum iīs insidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset¹ eōrum avus, quae māter. Rōmulus statim armātis pāstōribus Albam² pro-
5 perāvit.

442. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt, eum accūsantēs quasi³ Numitōris agrōs infēstāre solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est; at Numitor, adulēscētis vultum cōn-
10 sīderāns, haud⁴ procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret. Nam Remus ōris līncāmentīs⁵ erat mātīrī simillimus aetās-que expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium tenet,⁶ repente Rōmulus supervenit, frātrem liberat, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum
15 restituit.⁷

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in iisdem locīs, ubi expositī ubique educātī erant, condidērunt⁸; sed ortā inter eōs contentiōne, uter⁹ nōmen novae urbī daret¹⁰ eamque regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt¹¹ adhibēre. Remus prior sex
20 vulturēs, Rōmulus postea duodecim vīdit. Sic Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur. Cuius¹² angustias inrīdēns cum Remus saltū id trāiēcisset, eum irātus¹³ Rōmulus interfēcit, hīs increpāns verbis: "Sic deinde, quī-
25 cumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea!" Ita sōlus potitus est imperiō¹⁴ Rōmulus.

¹ For mood and tense, see 369-374. ² See 231. ³ on the ground that. ⁴ *haud . . . āgnōsceret*, came very near recognizing his grandson. ⁵ See 157. ⁶ *dum*, while, regularly takes the pres. ind. where the English uses the imperfect; translate "was keeping." ⁷ *restituō*. ⁸ *condō*. ⁹ as to which of the two. ¹⁰ Why subjunctive? ¹¹ *dēcernō*. ¹² *its*. ¹³ *in anger*. ¹⁴ For case, see 337.

443. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

War with the Sabines

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in¹ proximō lūcus; hunc asyllum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs² latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mīsīt, quī societātem cōnū-⁵ biumque novō populō peterent.³ Nusquam benīgnē audīta lēgātiō est; lūdibrium etiam additum: "Cūr nōn fēminis quoque asyllum aperuistis? Id enim compār foret⁴ cōnūbium." Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indicī⁵ deinde finitimīs spectāculum iubet. Multī¹⁰ convēnērunt studiō videndae novae urbis, maximē Sabīnī cum liberīs et coniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque⁶ conversae mentēs⁷ cum oculīs erant, tum signō datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.⁸

Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs¹⁵ raptās⁹ bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt,¹⁰ quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum¹¹ ierat. Huius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī¹² exercitum suum²⁰ in Capitōlium perdūxisset. Illa petiīt quod Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gererent,¹³ vidēlicet aureōs ānulōs et armillās. Quibus dolōsē prōmissīs, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem per-

¹ in proximō, *near by*. ² number. ³ See 364. ⁴ = *esset*, *would be*. ⁵ Pres. pass. infin. of *indicō*, *to be announced*. ⁶ *eo* = *in spectāculum*. ⁷ *mentēs cum oculīs*, *minds and eyes alike* (literally, *minds with eyes*). ⁸ The connective, *et*, is often omitted in rapid historical narrative. ⁹ *ob virginēs raptās*, *on account of the seizure of the maidens* (literally, *on account of the seized maidens*). ¹⁰ *nancīscor*. ¹¹ Supine to denote purpose; see 438. ¹² *sī . . . perdūxisset*, *if she would lead*. ¹³ *wore*.

dūxit, ubi Tatius scūtis eam¹ obrui iussit; nam et² ea in laevis habuerant. Sīc impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est.

444. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

Peace with the Sabines. Death of Romulus

Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcessit, et in eō locō ubi
 5 nunc Rōmānum Forum est pugnam cōseruit. Primō
 impetū vir inter Rōmānōs insignis, nōmine Hostīlius, fortissimē dīmīcāns³ cecidit⁴; quārē Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: "Vicimus perfidōs hospites,⁵ imbellēs hostēs. Nunc sciunt longē⁶ aliud esse virginēs
 10 rapere, aliud pugnāre cum viris." Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit, et exercitus restitit.⁷ Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia inferre et hinc patrēs, hinc virōs orantēs,⁸ pācem conciliāvērunt.
 15 Rōmulus Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērūm haud ita multō post, occisō Tatiō, ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis recidit. Centum deinde ex senīōribus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Trēs equitum centuriās cōstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Hīs ita ōrdinātis, cum ad⁹ exercitum lūstrandum cōtiōnem in campō habēret, subitō coorta est tempestās et Rōmulus ē cōspectū ablātus est.¹⁰ Ad deōs trānsisse vulgō crēditus est.¹¹ Aedēs in colle Quirīnālī Rōmulō¹² cōstitutā, ipse prō deō cultus¹³ et Quirīnus est
 25 appellātus.

¹ eam obrui iussit, ordered her to be buried. ² et ea, these also. ³ while fighting. ⁴ cadō. ⁵ hosts. ⁶ longē aliud esse . . . aliud, that it is one thing . . . quite another. ⁷ resistō, held its ground. ⁸ by beseeching. ⁹ See 406, 3. ¹⁰ auferō. ¹¹ crēditus est, he was believed. ¹² in honor of Romulus. ¹³ colō.

445. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

(716-673 B.C.)

Successit Rōmulō Numa Pompilius, vir inclutā iūstitiā¹ et religiōne. Is Curibus,² ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, accitus est. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, ut populū ferū religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima instituit. Aram Vestae cōsecrāvit, et ignem in arā perpetuō alendum³ virginibus dedit. Flāminem⁴ Iovis sacerdotem creāvit eumque insīgnī veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Dīcitur quondam ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicuisse. Hīc, ingentibus fulminibus in urbem dēmīssīs, dēscendit in nemus Aventīnum, ubi Numam docuit quibus sacrīs fulmina essent⁵ prōcūranda, et praetereā imperī¹⁰ certa pīgnora populō Rōmānō datūrum sē esse prōmīsīt. Numa laetus rem populō nūntiāvit. Postrīdiē omnēs ad aedēs⁶ rēgiās convēnērunt silentēsque expectābant quid futūrum esset. Atque sōle ortō⁷ delābitur ē caelō scūtum, quod ancīle appellāvit Numa. Id nē fūrtō auferri¹⁵ posset, Māmurium fabrum undecim scūta eādē fōrmā⁸ fabricāre iussit. Duodecim autem Saliōs Mārtis sacerdotēs lēgit, quī ancīlia, sēcrēta illa imperī pīgnora, cūstōdīrent.

446. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae Numa Pompilius dēscripsit; nefāstōs⁹ fāstōsque diēs fēcīt; portās²⁰ Iānō¹⁰ geminō aedificāvit ut esset index pācis et bellī; nam

¹ For case, see 303. ² Curibus . . . Sabīnōrum, from Cures, a town of the Sabines; why is the prep. omitted with Curibus? ³ to be kept. ⁴ Flāminem . . . creāvit, he appointed a priest as flamen for Jupiter. ⁵ essent prōcūranda, should be averted. ⁶ aedēs rēgiās, the palace. ⁷ sōle ortō (orior), at sunrise. ⁸ eādē fōrmā: see 303. ⁹ nefāstōs . . . fēcīt, he made a distinction between business days and sacred days. ¹⁰ Iānō geminō, in honor of two-headed Janus.

apertus,¹ in armīs esse civitātem, clausus, pācātōs circā omnēs populōs, significābat.

Lēgēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit Numa. Ut vērō maiōrem institūtis suis auctōritātem conciliāret, simulāvit sibi² cum deā Ēgeriā esse conloquia nocturna eiusque³ monitū sē omnia quae ageret facere. Lūcus erat, quem⁴ medium fōns perennī⁵ rigābat aquā; eō saepe Numa sine arbitrīs sē inferēbat, velut ad congressum deae; ita omnium animōs eā⁶ pietāte imbuit, ut fidēs ac iūsiurandum
 10 nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēret. Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus civitātī prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Morbō exstinctus in Iāniculō monte sepultus⁷ est. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, civitātem auxerunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā
 15 rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

447. MUCIUS SCAEVOLA

(507 B.C.)

Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius, vir Rōmānae cōstantiae, senātum adiit et veniam⁸ trānsfugiendī petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte⁹ cum in castra Porsenae vēnisset, ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope
 20 tribūnal cōstitit.¹⁰ Stīpendium tunc forte militibus dabātur et scriba cum rēge parī ferē ōrnātū sedēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, illum prō rēge occidit. Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus¹¹ dextram accēnsō¹² ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, velut manum pūniēns, quod in caede peccās-

¹ Agrees with Iānus understood, subject of significābat, when opened.

² sibi esse, that he had: why is sibi dative? ³ eiusque monitū, at her suggestion.

⁴ quem medium, the middle of which. ⁵ perennī aquā: see 303.

⁶ eā pietāte, with such piety. ⁷ sepeliō. ⁸ veniam trānsfugiendī, permission to go over (to the enemy). ⁹ privilegē. ¹⁰ cōsistō. ¹¹ pertrahō.

¹² accēnsō foculō, in a brazier that was burning.

set. Attonitus mīrāculō rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, ait trecentōs adversus eum suī¹ similēs coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus bellum acceptīs obsidibus dēposuit. Mūciō prāta trāns Tiberim data, ab eō Mūcia appellāta. Statua⁵ quoque ei honōris grātiā cōstitutā est.

448. PUBLIUS DECIUS

(343 B.C.)

P. Decius, Valeriō² Maximō et Cornēliō Cossō cōsuli-
bus, tribūnus militum fuit. Exercitū Rōmānō in angus-
tiīs Gaurī montis clausō Decius ēditum collem cōspēxit
imminentem hostium castrīs. Acceptō praesidiō verticem³ ¹⁰
occupāvit, hostēs terruit, cōsulī spatium dedit ad subdū-
cendum agmen in aequiōrem locum. Ipse, colle quem
īnsēderat undique armātīs circumdatō, intempestā nocte
per⁴ mediās hostium cūstōdiās somnō oppressās incolumis⁵
ēvāsīt. Quā rē ab exercitū dōnātus est corōnā cīvīcā, quae ¹⁵
dabātur ei qui⁶ cīvēs in bellō servāsset. Cōsul fuit bellō
Latīnō cum Mānliō Torquātō. Hōc bellō cum⁷ utrique
cōsulī somniō obvēnisset, eōs victōrēs futūrōs, quōrum
dux in proeliō cecidisset, convēnit inter eōs ut,⁸ utrius
cornū⁹ in aciē labōrāret, is diīs sē Mānibus dēvovēret. ²⁰
Inclinante suā parte Decius sē et hostēs diīs Mānibus
dēvōvit. Armātus in equum īsiluit ac sē in mediōs hostēs
immīsīt; corruit obrutus tēlīs et victōriam suis reliquit.

¹ Refers to **Mūcius**. ² **Valeriō . . . cōsulibus**, in the consulship of, etc., abl. absolute; see 316. ³ *the summit of the hill*. ⁴ **per . . . cūstōdiās**, through the midst of the enemy's pickets. ⁵ *safely*. ⁶ *because*. ⁷ **cum . . . obvēnisset**; when the two consuls had dreamed (literally, when it had come to each of the two consuls by a dream). ⁸ **ut . . . dēvovēret** is subject of **convēnit**; translate "it was agreed among them that he whose (**utrius**), etc., should," etc. ⁹ Nominative.

449. GAIUS DUILIUS

(260 B.C.)

I. Gāius Duīlius Poenōs nāvālī pugnā prīmus¹ dēvīcit. Quī cum vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicīs vėlōcitatē superārī, manūs² ferreās, māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvēs tenendāsque ūtilem, excōgitāvit. Quae
 5 manūs² ubi hostilem apprehenderant nāvem, superiectō ponte trānsgrediēbātur Rōmānus³ et in ipsōrum ratibus comminus dimicābant, unde⁴ Rōmānīs, quī rōbore prae-stābant, facilis victōria fuit. Celeriter sunt expugnātae nāvēs Pūnicae trīgintā, mersae⁵ tredecim.

10 Duīlius victor Rōmam reversus prīmus nāvālem trium-phum ēgit. Nulla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit, quod invictī⁶ terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum⁷ possent. Itaque Duīliō⁸ concēssum est, ut per omnem vitam praelūcente fūnālī et praecinente tībicine ā cēnā rediret.

15 II. Hannibal, dux classis Pūnicae, ē nāvī quae iam capiēbātur, in scapham saltū sē dēmittēns Rōmānōrum manūs effūgit. Veritus autem nē in patriā classis⁹ āmissae poenās daret, cīvium odium astūtiā āvertit, nam ex illā infēlicī pugnā priusquam clādis nūntius domum perveniret
 20 quendam ex amīcīs Carthāginem mīsīt. Quī postquam cūriam intrāvit, "Cōnsulit"¹⁰ inquit "vōs Hannibal, cum dux Rōmānōrum māgnīs cōpiīs maritimīs instrūctis advēnerit, num cum eō cōnfligere dēbeat?" Acclāmāvit ūniversus senātus nōn esse dubium quīn¹¹ cōnfligī oportē-

¹ prīmus dēvīcit, *was the first to conquer.* ² manūs ferreās, *grappling irons.* ³ the Romans, a collective noun. ⁴ and as a consequence.

⁵ mergō. ⁶ invictī terrā, *victorious on land.* ⁷ plūrimum possent, *they were supreme.* ⁸ Duīliō concēssum est ut, etc., *Duilius was allowed to, etc.*

⁹ classis āmissae, *for losing the fleet.* ¹⁰ Cōnsulit . . . vōs . . . num, *asks your advice as to whether.* ¹¹ that.

ret. Tum ille "Cōnflīxit" inquit "et superātus est." Ita nōn potuērunt factum damnāre, quod ipsī fierī dēbuisse iūdicāverant. Sic Hannibal victus crucis supplicium effūgit: nam eō poenae genere dux rē male gestā apud Poenōs adficiēbātur.

5

450. APPIUS CLAUDIUS PULCHER

(249 B.C.)

Appius Claudius, vir stultae temeritātis, cōsul adversus Poenōs profectus priōrum ducum cōsilia palam reprehendēbat sēque, quō¹ diē hostem vīdisset, bellum cōfectūrum esse iactitābat. Quī cum, antequam nāvāle proelium committeret, auspicia² habēret pullāriusque eī nūntiāset,¹⁰ pullōs nōn exīre ē caveā neque vēscī, inrīdēns iussit eōs in aquam mergī, ut saltem biberent, quoniam ēsse³ nōllent. Ea rēs cum, quasi⁴ irātis diīs, militēs ad omnia sēgniōrēs timidiōrēsque fēcisset, commissō proeliō magna clādēs ā Rōmānīs accepta est: octō eōrum millia caesa sunt,¹⁵ vīgintī millia capta. Quā re Claudius posteā ā populō condemnātus est damnatiōnisque ignōminiam voluntariā morte praevēnit. Ea rēs calamitātī⁵ fuit etiam Claudiaē,⁵ cōsulis sorōrī: quae ā lūdīs publicīs revertēns in cōnfertā multitūdine aegrē prōcēdente carpentō, palam optāvit²⁰ ut frāter suus Pulcher revivisceret atque iterum classem amitteret, quō⁶ minor turba Rōmae foret.⁷ Ob vōcem illam impiam Claudia quoque damnāta gravisque⁸ ei dicta est multa.

¹ quō diē, *on the same day that.* ² auspicia habēret, *was consulting the auspices.* ³ Infinitive of edō, *to eat.* ⁴ quasi irātis diīs, *because (as they thought) the gods were angry.* ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ quō, *so that.* ⁷ esset.
⁸ gravisque . . . multa, *and a heavy fine was imposed upon her.*

CAESAR. GALLIC WAR. BOOK II (*Adapted*)

CHAPTER I

451. THE BELGAE FORM A CONFEDERACY AGAINST THE ROMANS

Dum Caesar in Galliā in hibernis est,¹ omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant obsidēsque inter² sē dabant. Coniūrandī³ hae erant causae: primum nōlēbant⁴ nostrum exercitum ad sē⁵ addūcī,⁶ deinde ab nōn-
 5 nullis Gallis sollicitābantur. Hī populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant. Nōnnūllī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs⁷ imperiīs studēbant. Ab nōnnūllis etiam sollicitābantur, quod in Galliā ā potentibus atque ab iis quī condūcere hominēs poterant⁸ vulgō rēgna
 10 occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō⁹ nostrō cōsequī¹⁰ poterant.

CHAPTER II

452. CAESAR PROCEEDS AGAINST THE BELGAE

Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus est Caesar. Duās lēgiōnēs in citeriōre¹¹ Galliā novās cōscripsit.¹² In interiōrem¹³ Galliam cum hīs lēgiōnibus Quīntum Pedium
 15 lēgātum mīsīt. Ipse paucīs post¹⁴ diēbus ad exercitum vēnit. Senonēs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, ea quae apud Belgās geruntur cōgnōscunt, atque Caesarī omnēs nūntiant: “Manūs cōguntur, et exercitus in ūnum locum condūcitur.” Tum vērō Caesar contendit ad eōs proficīscī.¹⁵

¹ was. ² inter sē, each other (literally, between themselves). ³ of conspiring. ⁴ From nōlō. ⁵ them. ⁶ Present passive infinitive, to be led. ⁷ novīs imperiīs, revolution. ⁸ Imperfect of possum. ⁹ imperiō nostrō, under our rule. ¹⁰ to obtain. ¹¹ See map of Gaul, page 10. ¹² From cōscribō. ¹³ the interior of. ¹⁴ afterwards. ¹⁵ to set out.

Itaque castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

CHAPTER III

453. THE REMI IMMEDIATELY SUBMIT TO CAESAR

Eō¹ dē imprōvisō celeriterque vēnit Caesar. Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex² Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Audecumborium mīsērunt, quī dixērunt, “Nōs omnia in³ fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus. Parātī sumus obsidēs dare et tua imperāta facere et tē oppidīs³ recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum¹⁰ incolunt, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt.⁴ Maximus est eōrum omnium furor, et nōn potuimus prohibēre Suessiōnēs, frātres cōsanguineōsque nostrōs, cum hīs cōsentīre.⁵”

CHAPTER IV

454. CAESAR LEARNS FROM THE REMI THE STRENGTH OF THE ENEMY'S FORCES

Caesar ab hīs lēgātīs sīc reperiēbat; plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs¹⁵ propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque expulisse, atque Teutonīs⁶ Cimbrīsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi⁷ prohibītīs eārum rērum⁸ memoriā magnam auctōritātem sibi in rē militārī sūmere. Dē numerō eōrum omnia⁹ sē habēre

¹ *there, i.e. ad finēs Belgārum.* ² *ex Belgīs, of the Belgae.* ³ *oppidīs recipere = in oppida recipere.* ⁴ *From coniungō.* ⁵ *from conspiring.*
⁶ *Teutonīs . . . prohibītīs, abl. absolute, stating the reason or cause.*
⁷ *from entering.* ⁸ *deeds; refers to repelling the Teutones and Cimbri.*
⁹ *omnia explōrāta, full information.*

explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs, et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō posse; hōs posse cōficere armāta mīllia centum. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre.
 5 Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā¹ Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum: nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad² hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque tōtīus bellī summam omnium voluntāte dēferri.

CHAPTER V

455. CAESAR RECEIVES HOSTAGES FROM THE REMI AND
ENCAMPS ON THE BANKS OF THE AXONA

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum ad sē con-
 10 venīre prīncipumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad³ diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus monet ut manūs hostium distineantur. Id fieri potest, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint⁴ et eōrum
 15 agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs mandātis eum ab sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse vidit, flūmen Axonam exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae⁵ rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat
 20 et quae⁶ post eum essent tūta ab hostibus reddēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

¹ Ablative of time within which. Why is **memoriā**, 454, line 18, ablative?
² *on.* ³ **ad diem**, to the very day. ⁴ Future perfect indicative. ⁵ **Quae rēs**,
 this position, i.e. crossing the river. ⁶ **quae . . . essent**, the rear.

CHAPTER VI

456. THE BELGAE LAY SIEGE TO BIBRAX, A TOWN OF THE REMI

Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum¹ est. Gallōrum atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Circum-
iectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus² undique in
mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt. Ubi mūrus dēfēnsōri-
bus nūdātus est, testūdine³ factā portās succēdunt mūrum-
que subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta
multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī
potestās erat nulli.⁴ Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset,¹⁰
Iccius Rēmus, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, nūntium ad eum
mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre
nōn posse.⁵

CHAPTER VII

457. THE BELGAE ABANDON THE SIEGE OF BIBRAX

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem⁶ ducibus ūsus⁷ quī
nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et¹⁵
funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō⁸ oppidānis mittit; quōrum
adventū hostibus spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque
paulisper apud oppidum morāti agrōsque Rēmōrum dē-
populātī, multīs vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs, ad castra Cae-
saris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab⁹ millibus passuum²⁰

¹ **sustentātum est**, *the attack was sustained* (literally, *it was sustained*).

² Why dative? See 394. ³ This was done by placing the shields over the heads of the soldiers. ⁴ Dative of possession. ⁵ Infinitive in indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in **nūntium mittit**. ⁶ **isdem ducibus**, *the same persons as guides*. ⁷ *using*. ⁸ For construction, see 294, 295. ⁹ An adverb, *away, off*.

minus duobus castra posuērunt; quae castra ut¹ fūmō atque ignibus sīgnificābātur, amplius millibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

CHAPTER VIII

458. DESCRIPTION OF CAESAR'S CAMP. HE AWAITS THE ATTACK OF THE BELGAE

Caesar propter multitudinem hostium et propter opīniō-
nem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit, cottidiē tamen
equestribus proeliis quid² hostis virtūte posset et quid nos-
trī audērent perīclitābātur.³ Nostrōs nōn esse inferiōres
intellēxit. Locus prō castris ad aciem instruendam erat
nātūrā idōneus, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, pau-
lulum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum⁴ adversus in lātitudinem
patēbat quantum loci aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat. Ab⁵
utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit cir-
citer passuum quādringentōrum et ad⁶ extrēmās fossās
castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum
aciem instrūxisset, hostēs ab⁵ lateribus pignantēs suōs
circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus lēgiōnibus quās
proximē cōscripserat in castris relictis, reliquās sex lēgiōnēs
prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex
castris ēductās⁷ instrūxerant.

CHAPTER IX

459. THE BELGAE TRY TO CROSS THE AXONA

Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exer-
citum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant⁸;

¹ *as*; *ut* with the indicative means "*as*" or "*when*." ² *quid* . . . *posset*, *what the enemy could do by their valor*. ³ *he tried to ascertain*. ⁴ *tantum patēbat quantum loci*, *spread over as much space as*. ⁵ *on*. ⁶ *ad extrēmās fossās*, *at the ends of the trenches*. ⁷ See 311, 7. ⁸ *were waiting to see*.

nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut¹ impeditōs aggredere^{ntur}, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre² equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs; prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus³ potu-¹⁰ issent, ut agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur⁴ commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.⁴

CHAPTER X

460. THE BELGAE ARE DEFEATED IN THE BATTLE THAT
FOLLOWS

Caesar omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Nostrī hostēs impeditōs in flūmine aggressī¹⁵ magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; reliquōs per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs⁵ interfēcērunt. Hostēs, ubi et dē⁶ expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt²⁰ neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem⁷ prōgredi pugnandī causā vīdērunt atque ubi ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere

¹ ut . . . aggredere^{ntur}, to attack, depending upon parātī erant. ² secundiōre . . . nostrīs, abl. absolute; since the cavalry battle was more favorable to our men. ³ not. ⁴ These subjunctives also express the purpose of trādūcere cōnātī sunt. ⁵ See 311, 7. ⁶ dē . . . spem sē fefellisse, that they had been disappointed in the hope of . . . (literally, that hope had failed them about . . .). ⁷ unfavorable.

coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum¹ esse domum suam quemque reverti ad suōs finēs dēfendendōs, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam
 5 sententiam haec ratiō² eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs³ persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

CHAPTER XI

461. THE ROMANS PURSUE THE BELGAE AS THEY
DISPERSE

Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac
 10 tumultū castris ēgressi nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō fēcērunt⁴ ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā⁵ dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Prīmā lūce, cōn-
 15 fīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur,⁶ praemisit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa millia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt.
 20 Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum⁶ fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsumque sōlis dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut⁷ erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

¹ optimum esse, *that it was best.* ² consideration. ³ Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat, *these could not be persuaded* (literally, *it could not be persuaded these*). ⁴ fēcērunt ut . . . profectiō vidērētur, *they made their departure seem.* ⁵ quā dē causā, *why.* ⁶ quantum . . . spatium, *as the length of the day allowed.* ⁷ as.

CHAPTER XII

462. CAESAR MARCHES AGAINST THE SUESSIONES, AND CAPTURES THE TOWN NOVIODUNUM

Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et magnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem expugnāre nōn potuit. Celeriter vineīs¹ ad oppidum āctis,² aggere³ iactō, turribusque cōstitutīs, magnitudine operum et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti Suessiōnēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et petentibus⁴ Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

10

CHAPTER XIII

463. THE BELLOVACI ALSO SURRENDER TO CAESAR

Caesar obsidibus acceptīs armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis in dēditionē Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque cum ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter millia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs¹⁵ maiōrēs⁵ nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs⁶ manibus²⁰ suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

¹ Wooden frames covered with hides, to protect the besiegers. ² *moved*, from *agō*. ³ The principal work for a formal siege. It was begun at a distance from the wall and gradually built up until it was equal to the height of the fortification. ⁴ *petentibus Rēmīs*, at the request of the Remi, abl. absolute. ⁵ For comparison, see 272. ⁶ *pandō*.

CHAPTER XIV

464. DIVICIACUS SPEAKS IN BEHALF OF THE BELLOVACI

Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba : Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitatīs Haeduae fuisse : impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Eōs quī eius cōsili prīncipēs¹ fuissent,²
 5 quod³ intellegerent² quantam calamitātem cīvitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod⁴ sī fēcērit,² Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum ;
 10 quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī⁵ qua bella inciderint,² sustentāre cōsuērint.²

CHAPTER XV

465. CAESAR'S REPLY. DESCRIPTION OF THE NERVII

Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit ; quod erat cīvītās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte⁶ atque hominum
 15 multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant ; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat :
 20 nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus⁷ ; patī nihil vīnī⁸ reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri : esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis ; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī⁹ sē populō Rōmānō dēdidis-

¹ *authors.* ² For the construction of these subjunctives, see 427. ³ *because.* ⁴ *Quod . . . fēcērit, if he should do this.* ⁵ *sī . . . inciderint, whatever wars occurred.* ⁶ For construction, see 303. ⁷ See 238. ⁸ See 251. ⁹ *because.*

sent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

CHAPTER XVI

466. THE NERVII AWAIT THE APPROACH OF CAESAR

Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīllia pas-
suum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā¹ cum Atrebātis et Viromanduīs, finitimīs suīs; exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpīas atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque² per aetātem³ ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō⁴ propter palūdēs exercitū⁵ aditus nōn esset.

CHAPTER XVII

467. THE NERVII PLAN TO TAKE CAESAR BY SURPRISE

Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum complūrēs ex Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs Caesarem secūtī ūnā⁶ iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnērunt. Hīs dēmōnstrāvērunt inter singulās⁷ legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam⁸ negōtī, cum primā lēgiō in castra vēnisset, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque direptīs futūrum⁹ ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Nervīi autem antiquitus, quō¹⁰ facilius finitimōrum equitātum impedīrent,

¹ ūnā cum, along with. ² and those who. ³ Do not confuse this word with aestās, -ātis. ⁴ where. ⁵ Dative of possession, 238. ⁶ along with him. ⁷ inter singulās legiōnēs, between each two legions. ⁸ quicquam negōtī, any trouble. ⁹ futūrum ut, the result would be that. ¹⁰ quō facilius, that they might the more easily.

fēcerant saepēs¹ quae īnstar mūrī mūnimenta praebērent. Hīs rēbus iter agminis nostrī impeditū² īrī Nervii exīstimāvērunt.

CHAPTER XVIII

468. DESCRIPTION OF THE ROMAN CAMPING GROUND

Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlē-
 5 gerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen
 Sabim, quod suprà nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine
 parī acclivitate collis nāscēbātur, passūs circiter ducentōs
 infimus³ apertus, ab⁴ superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn
 facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in
 10 occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum⁵ flūmen
 paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat alti-
 tudō circiter pedum trium.

CHAPTER XIX

469. THE NERVII CARRY OUT THEIR PLAN OF ATTACK

Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs.
 Sed quod ad hostēs appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā
 15 Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius
 exercitūs impedimenta conlocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs,
 quae proximē cōscrip̄tae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant
 praesidiōque⁶ impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī, cum
 funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressī, cum hostium
 20 equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in
 silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs
 impetum facerent, nostrī cēdentēs⁷ īnsequī nōn audēbant.

¹ *Hedges*, made by bending down young trees and allowing brambles and
 briars to grow among them. ² *impeditum iri*; future passive infinitive.
³ *at the foot.* ⁴ *ab superiōre parte, in the upper part.* ⁵ *along.* ⁶ See
 294, 295. ⁷ Agrees with *hostēs* understood.

Interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere¹ dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, subito omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nōstrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibili cele-
ritātē ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus² nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritātē adversō³ colle ad nostra castra atque ad eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

10

CHAPTER XX

470. QUICK WORK BY CAESAR. 'SPLENDID DISCIPLINE OF THE TROOPS

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda⁴: vēxillum prōpōnendum, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, aciēs instruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae⁵ rēs erant subsidiō⁶ — scientia⁶ atque ūsus⁶ mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī nōn minus commodē ipsī⁷ sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque⁸ legiōnibus singulōs⁹ lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnqui-
tātem et celeritātem hostium nihil¹⁰ iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae¹¹ vidēbantur administrābant.

¹ opere dīmēnsō, *after laying out the work*. Dīmēnsō from dīmetior.
² in manibus nostrīs, *close upon us*. ³ adversō colle, *up the hill*. ⁴ See 438, 439. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ in apposition with rēs. ⁷ ipsī sibi praescribere . . . poterant, *they could direct themselves on their own responsibility (ipsī)*. ⁸ his (respective). ⁹ each. ¹⁰ not . . . any. ¹¹ quae vidēbantur, *whatever seemed best*.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

471. FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā-

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	stella	-a	stellae	-ae
GEN.	stellae	-ae	stellārum	-ārum
DAT.	stellae	-ae	stellis	-is
ACC.	stellam	-am	stellās	-ās
ABL.	stellā	-ā	stellis	-is

472. SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-

SINGULAR

	MASC.	TERMINATIONS	NEUT.	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	hortus	-us	dōnum	-um
GEN.	horti	-ī	dōnī	-ī
DAT.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
ACC.	hortum	-um	dōnum	-um
ABL.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō

PLURAL

NOM.	horti	-ī	dōna	-a
GEN.	hortōrum	-ōrum	dōnōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	hortis	-is	dōnīs	-īs
ACC.	hortōs	-ōs	dōna	-a
ABL.	hortis	-is	dōnīs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension has a special form in **-e** : **horte**.

SINGULAR

NOM.	puer	ager	vir	filius
GEN.	puerī	agrī	virī	filī, -īī
DAT.	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō
ACC.	puerum	agrum	virum	filium
ABL.	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō

PLURAL

NOM.	puerī	agrī	virī	filīī
GEN.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	filīōrum
DAT.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīīs
ACC.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	filīōs
ABL.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīīs

a. The vocative singular of **filius** is **filī**.

473.

THIRD DECLENSION

a. CONSONANT STEMS

SINGULAR					TERMINATIONS FOR CONSONANT STEMS	
					M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	dux	miles	virtūs	caput	(-s)	
GEN.	ducis	militis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
DAT.	ducī	militi	virtūti	capiti	-ī	-ī
ACC.	ducem	militem	virtūtem	caput	-em	
ABL.	duce	militē	virtūte	capite	-e	-e
PLURAL						
NOM.	ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
GEN.	ducum	militum	virtutum	capitum	-um	-um
DAT.	ducibus	militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
ABL.	ducibus	militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

SINGULAR

NOM.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōnsulī	hominī	patri	corporī
ACC.	cōnsule m	hominem	patrem	corpus
ABL.	cōnsule	homine	patre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōnsul um	homin um	patr um	corpor um
DAT.	cōnsul ibus	homin ibus	patr ibus	corpor ibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōnsul ibus	homin ibus	patr ibus	corpor ibus

b. I-STEMS

TERMINATIONS
FOR i-STEMS

M. AND F. N.

SINGULAR

NOM.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal	-s	
GEN.	collis	caedis	montis	animālis	-is	-is
DAT.	collī	caedī	montī	animālī	-ī	-ī
ACC.	collem	caedem	montem	animal	-em	
ABL.	colle	caede	monte	animālī	-e	-ī

PLURAL

NOM.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
GEN.	coll ium	caed ium	mont ium	animāli um	-i um	-i um
DAT.	coll ibus	caed ibus	mont ibus	animāl ibus	-i bus	-i bus
ACC.	collis, ēs	caedis, ēs	montis, ēs	animālia	-is, ēs	-ia
ABL.	coll ibus	caed ibus	mont ibus	animāl ibus	-i bus	-i bus

474. FOURTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -u-

SINGULAR

	MAS.	TERMINATIONS	NEUT.	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	cāsus	-us	cornū	-ū
GEN.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
DAT.	cāsuī, ū	-uī, ū	cornū	-ū
ACC.	cāsum	-um	cornū	-ū
ABL.	cāsū	-ū	cornū	-ū

	MAS.	PLURAL TERMINATIONS	NEUT.	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	cāsūs.	-ūs	cornua	-ua
GEN.	cāsuum	-uum	cornuum	-uum
DAT.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus
ACC.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
ABL.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus

475. FIFTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ē-

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	TERMINATIONS	
					SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum	-ēi	um
DAT.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēi	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

476. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

	SINGULAR		
NOM.	vir	vīs	deus
GEN.	virī	—	dei
DAT.	virō	—	deō
ACC.	virum	vim	deum
ABL.	virō	vī	deō
	PLURAL		
NOM.	virī	vīrēs	dei, dii, di
GEN.	virōrum	vīrium	deōrum, deum
DAT.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diis, dis
ACC.	virōs	vīrēs	deōs
ABL.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diis, dis
	SINGULAR		
NOM.	senex	iter	domus
GEN.	senis	itineris	domūs
DAT.	senī	itinerī	domuī, ō
ACC.	senem	iter	domum
ABL.	sene	itinere	domō, ū

		PLURAL	
NOM.	senēs	itinera	domūs
GEN.	senum	itinerum	domuum, ōrum
DAT.	senibus	itineribus	domibus
ACC.	senēs	itinera	domōs, ūs
ABL.	senibus	itineribus	domibus

ADJECTIVES

477. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

	MASC.	SINGULAR	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	bonus	bona	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonā	bonō
		PLURAL		
NOM.	bonī	bonae	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
		SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
NOM.	liber	libera	libera	liberum
GEN.	liberī	liberae	liberae	liberī
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberae	liberō
ACC.	liberum	liberam	liberam	liberum
ABL.	liberō	liberā	liberā	liberō
		PLURAL		
NOM.	liberī	liberae	liberae	libera
GEN.	liberōrum	liberārum	liberārum	liberōrum
DAT.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
ACC.	liberōs	liberās	liberās	libera
ABL.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACC.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

PLURAL

NOM.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
ACC.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

478.

THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

NOM.	ācres	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrīs, ēs	ācrīs, ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

SINGULAR

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	facilis	facile	ferāx	ferāx
GEN.	facilis	facilis	ferācis	ferācis
DAT.	facilī	facilī	ferācī	ferācī
ACC.	facilem	facile	ferācem	ferāx
ABL.	facilī	facilī	ferācī, e	ferācī, e

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	PLURAL	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	facilēs	facilia		ferācēs	ferācia
GEN.	facilium	facilium		ferācium	ferācium
DAT.	facilibus	facilibus		ferācibus	ferācibus
ACC.	facilīs, ēs	facilia		ferācīs, ēs	ferācia
ABL.	facilibus	facilibus		ferācibus	ferācibus

479.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
DAT.	amanti	amanti	amantibus	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantīs, ēs	amantia
ABL.	amantē, ī	amānte, ī	amantibus	amantibus
NOM.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
GEN.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
DAT.	eunti	eunti	euntibus	euntibus
ACC.	euntem	iēns	euntīs, ēs	euntia
ABL.	eunte, ī	eunte, ī	euntibus	euntibus

480.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alii	aliae	alia
GEN.	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
DAT.	alii	alii	alii	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
ACC.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria	
GEN.	ūnūs	ūnūs	ūnūs	trium	trium	
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus	
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tris, trēs	tria	
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus	

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	mille	mīllia
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	mīllium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīllibus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	mīllia
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīllibus

481.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus (lāt-)	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, a, um
fortis (fort-)	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, a, um
vēlōx (vēlōc-)	vēlōcior, vēlōcius	vēlōcissimus, a, um
pulcher (pulchr-)	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, a, um
similis (simil-)	similior, similius	simillimus, a, um

482.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs, is	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre, ī	lātiōre, ī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, is	plūra
ABL.	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

483.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um	—, plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multī, ae, a	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, ae, a
vetus, veteris	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senex, senis	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis, e	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
exterus	exterior	extrēmus
		extimus
īferus	īferior	īfimus
		īmus
posterus	posterior	postrēmus
		postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus
		summus
[cis, citrā]	citerior	citimus
[in, intrā]	interior	intimus
[prae, prō]	prior	prīmus
[prope]	propior	proximus
[ultrā]	ulterior	ultimus

484.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE ADJ.	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (carus)	cārius	cārissimē
pulchrē (pulcher)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter (fortis)	fortius	fortissimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
male (malus)	peius	pessimē

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (*Continued*)

POSITIVE ADJ.	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimum
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū, <i>long, for a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

485.

NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, a, um	prīmus, a, um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus (<i>or</i> alter)
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quartus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus
19. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> { ūnus et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> { ūnus et vīcēsīmus
22. { vīgintī duo <i>or</i> { duo et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus secundus <i>or</i> { alter et vīcēsīmus

CARDINALS		ORDINALS	
28.	duodētrīgintā		duodētrīcēsīmus
29.	ūndētrīgintā		ūndētrīcēsīmus
30.	trīgintā		trīcēsīmus
40.	quadrāgintā		quadrāgēsīmus
50.	quīnquāgintā		quīnquāgēsīmus
60.	sexāgintā		sexāgēsīmus
70.	septuāgintā		septuāgēsīmus
80.	octōgintā		octōgēsīmus
90.	nōnāgintā		nōnāgēsīmus
100.	centum		centēsīmus
101.	{ centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus		{ centēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> centēsīmus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, ae, a		ducentēsīmus
300.	trecentī		trecentēsīmus
400.	quadrīngentī		quadrīngentēsīmus
500.	quīngentī		quīngentēsīmus
600.	sescentī		sēscentēsīmus
700.	septīngentī		septīngentēsīmus
800.	octīngentī		octīngentēsīmus
900.	nōngentī		nōngentēsīmus
1,000.	mille		mīllēsīmus
2,000.	duo mīllia		bis mīllēsīmus
100,000.	centum mīllia		centīēs mīllēsīmus

PRONOUNS

486.

486.	PERSONAL					
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
GEN.	meī	{ nostrum, nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum, vestrī	suī	suī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

487.

DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
NOM.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
NOM.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	īdem	eādem	īdem	{ eīdem īdem	eaedem	eādem
GEN.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	{ eōrun- dem	eārun- dem	eōrun- dem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīsdem īsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eādem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem īsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

488.

RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

489.

INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

490.

INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
GEN.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

NOM.	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
GEN.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

491. FIRST CONJUGATION

PRIN. PARTS: **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I love, am loving,
do love*

*I am loved,
am being loved*

S. **amō**

amor

amās

amāris, re

amat

amātur

P. **amāmus**

amāmur

amātis

amāmini

amant

amantur

IMPERFECT

*I was loving,
loved, did love*

*I was loved,
was being loved*

S. **amābam**

amābar

amābās

amābāris, re

amābat

amābātur

P. **amābāmus**

amābāmur

amābātis

amābāmini

amābant

amābantur

FUTURE

I shall love

I shall be loved

S. **amābō**

amābor

amābis

amāberis, re

amābit

amābitur

P. **amābimus**

amābimur

amābitis

amābimini

amābunt

amābuntur

492. SECOND CONJUGATION

PRIN. PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I advise, am advis-
ing, do advise*

*I am advised,
am being advised*

S. **monēō**

monēor

monēs

monēris, re

monet

monētur

P. **monēmus**

monēmur

monētis

monēmini

monent

monentur

IMPERFECT

*I was advising, ad-
vised, did advise*

*I was advised,
was being advised*

S. **monēbam**

monēbar

monēbās

monēbāris, re

monēbat

monēbātur

P. **monēbāmus**

monēbāmur

monēbātis

monēbāmini

monēbant

monēbantur

FUTURE

I shall advise

I shall be advised

S. **monēbō**

monēbor

monēbis

monēberis, re

monēbit

monēbitur

P. **monēbimus**

monēbimur

monēbitis

monēbimini

monēbunt

monēbuntur

REGULAR VERBS

493. THIRD CONJUGATION

PRIN. PARTS: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I lead, am leading,
do lead*

*I am led,
am being led*

s. **dūcō**

dūcor

dūcis

dūceris, re

dūcit

dūcitur

p. **dūcimus**

dūcimur

dūcitis

dūcimini

dūcunt

dūcuntur

IMPERFECT

*I was leading,
led, did lead*

*I was led,
was being led*

s. **dūcēbam**

dūcēbar

dūcēbās

dūcēbāris, re

dūcēbat

dūcēbātur

p. **dūcēbāmus**

dūcēbāmur

dūcēbātis

dūcēbāminī

dūcēbant

dūcēbantur

FUTURE

I shall lead

I shall be led

s. **dūcam**

dūcar

dūcēs

dūcēris, re

dūcet

dūcētur

p. **dūcēmus**

dūcēmur

dūcētis

dūcēminī

dūcent

dūcentur

494. FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRIN. PARTS: **audiō, ire, audīvī, auditus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I hear, am hearing,
do hear*

*I am heard,
am being heard*

s. **audiō**

audior

audīs

audīris, re

audit

audītur

p. **audīmus**

audīmur

audītis

audīminī

audiunt

audiuntur

IMPERFECT

*I was hearing,
heard, did hear*

*I was heard,
was being heard*

s. **audiēbam**

audiēbar

audiēbās

audiēbāris, re

audiēbat

audiēbātur

p. **audiēbāmus**

audiēbāmur

audiēbātis

audiēbāminī

audiēbant

audiēbantur

FUTURE

I shall hear

I shall be heard

s. **audiam**

audiar

audiēs

audiēris, re

audiet

audiētur

p. **audiēmus**

audiēmur

audiētis

audiēminī

audient

audientur

491. FIRST CONJUGATION—Cont.

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PERFECT			
<i>I have loved,</i> <i>loved</i>	<i>I have been loved,</i> <i>I was loved</i>		
S. amāvi	amātus sum		
amāvisti	es		
amāvit	est		
P. amāvimus	amātī sumus		
amāvistis	estis		
amāverunt, ēre	sunt		
PLUPERFECT			
<i>I had loved</i>	<i>I had been loved</i>		
S. amāveram	amātus eram		
amāverās	erās		
amāverat	erat		
P. amāverāmus	amātī erāmus		
amāverātis	erātis		
amāverant	erant		
FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>I shall have loved</i>	<i>I shall have been loved</i>		
S. amāverō	amātus erō		
amāveris	eris		
amāverit	erit		
P. amāverimus	amātī erimus		
amāveritis	eritis		
amāverint	erunt		
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
S. amem	amer		
amēs	amēris, re		
amet	amētur		
P. amēmus	amēmur		
amētis	amēmini		
amēnt	amentur		

492. SECOND CONJUGATION—Cont.

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PERFECT			
<i>I have advised,</i> <i>advised</i>	<i>I have been advised,</i> <i>I was advised</i>		
S. monui	monitus sum		
monuisti	es		
monuit	est		
P. monuimus	monitī sumus		
monuistis	estis		
monuērunt, ēre	sunt		
PLUPERFECT			
<i>I had advised</i>	<i>I had been advised</i>		
S. monueram	monitus eram		
monuerās	erās		
monuerat	erat		
P. monuerāmus	monitī erāmus		
monuerātis	erātis		
monuerant	erant		
FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>I shall have advised</i>	<i>I shall have been advised</i>		
S. monuerō	monitus erō		
monueris	eris		
monuerit	erit		
P. monuerimus	monitī erimus		
monueritis	eritis		
monuerint	erunt		
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
S. moneam	monear		
moneās	moneāris, re		
moneat	moneātur		
P. moneāmus	moneāmur		
moneātis	moneāmini		
moneant	moneantur		

493. THIRD CONJUGATION—Cont.

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
PERFECT		
<i>I have led,</i> <i>led</i>	<i>I have been led,</i> <i>was led</i>	
s. dūxī	ductus sum	
dūxisti	es	
dūxit	est	
p. dūximus	ducti sumus	
dūxistis	estis	
dūxērunt, ēre	sunt	
PLUPERFECT		
<i>I had led</i>	<i>I had been led</i>	
s. dūxeram	ductus eram	
dūxerās	erās	
dūxerat	erat	
p. dūxerāmus	ducti erāmus	
dūxerātis	erātis	
dūxerant	erant	
FUTURE PERFECT		
<i>I shall have led</i>	<i>I shall have been led</i>	
s. dūxerō	ductus erō	
dūxeris	eris	
dūxerit	erit	
p. dūxerimus	ducti erimus	
dūxeritis	eritis	
dūxerint	erunt	
SUBJUNCTIVE		
PRESENT		
s. dūcam	dūcar	
dūcās	dūcāris, re	
dūcat	dūcātur	
p. dūcāmus	dūcāmur	
dūcātis	dūcāmini	
dūcant	dūcantur	

494. FOURTH CONJ.—Cont.

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
PERFECT		
<i>I have heard,</i> <i>heard</i>	<i>I have been heard,</i> <i>I was heard</i>	
s. audīvī	audītus sum	
audivisti	es	
audivit	est	
p. audivimus	audīti sumus	
audivistis	estis	
audivērunt, ēre	sunt	
PLUPERFECT		
<i>I had heard</i>	<i>I had been heard</i>	
s. audiveram	audītus eram	
audiverās	erās	
audiverat	erat	
p. audiverāmus	audīti erāmus	
audiverātis	erātis	
audiverant	erant	
FUTURE PERFECT		
<i>I shall have heard</i>	<i>I shall have been heard</i>	
s. audiverō	audītus erō	
audiveris	eris	
audiverit	erit	
p. audiverimus	audīti erimus	
audiveritis	eritis	
audiverint	erunt	
SUBJUNCTIVE		
PRESENT		
s. audiam	audiar	
audiās	audiāris, re	
audiat	audiātur	
p. audiāmus	audiāmur	
audiātis	audiāmini	
audiant	audiantur	

491. FIRST CONJUGATION — *Cont.*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
IMPERFECT	
S. amārem	amārer
amārēs	amārēris, re
amāret	amārētur
P. amārēmus	amārēmur
amārētis	amārēmini
amārent	amārentur

PERFECT	
S. amāverim	amātus sim
amāveris	sīs
amāverit	sit
P. amāverimus	amātī sīmus
amāveritis	sītis
amāverint	sint

PLUPERFECT	
S. amāvissem	amātus essem
amāvissēs	essēs
amāvisset	esset
P. amāvissēmus	amātī essēmus
amāvissētis	essētis
amāvissent	essent

IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT	
S. 2. amā, <i>love</i>	amāre, <i>be thou</i>
<i>thou</i>	<i>loved</i>
P. 2. amāte, <i>love</i>	amāmini, <i>be ye</i>
<i>ye</i>	<i>ye loved</i>

492. SECOND CONJUGATION — *Cont.*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
IMPERFECT	
S. monērem	monērer
monērēs	monērēris, re
monēret	monērētur
P. monērēmus	monērēmur
monērētis	monērēmini
monērent	monērentur

PERFECT	
S. monuerim	monitus sim
monueris	sīs
monuerit	sit
P. monuerimus	monitī sīmus
monueritis	sītis
monuerint	sint

PLUPERFECT	
S. monuissēmus	monitus essem
monuissēs	essēs
monuisset	esset
P. monuissēmus	monitī essēmus
monuissētis	essētis
monuissent	essent

IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT	
S. 2. monē, <i>ad-</i>	monēre, <i>be</i>
<i>vise thou</i>	<i>thou advised</i>
P. 2. monēte,	monēmini, <i>be</i>
<i>advise ye</i>	<i>ye advised</i>

493. THIRD CONJUGATION—*Cont.*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
IMPERFECT	
s. <i>dūcerem</i>	<i>dūcerer</i>
<i>dūcerēs</i>	<i>dūcerēris, re</i>
<i>dūceret</i>	<i>dūcerētur</i>
P. <i>dūcerēmus</i>	<i>dūcerēmur</i>
<i>dūcerētis</i>	<i>dūcerēmini</i>
<i>dūcerent</i>	<i>dūcerentur</i>

PERFECT	
s. <i>dūxerim</i>	<i>ductus sim</i>
<i>dūxeris</i>	<i>sīs</i>
<i>dūxerit</i>	<i>sit</i>
P. <i>dūxerimus</i>	<i>ducti simus</i>
<i>dūxeritis</i>	<i>sītis</i>
<i>dūxerint</i>	<i>sint</i>

PLUPERFECT	
s. <i>dūxissem</i>	<i>ductus essem</i>
<i>dūxissēs</i>	<i>essēs</i>
<i>dūxisset</i>	<i>esset</i>
P. <i>dūxissēmus</i>	<i>ducti essēmus</i>
<i>dūxissētis</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>dūxissent</i>	<i>essent</i>

IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT	
s. 2. <i>dūc,¹ lead</i>	<i>dūcere, be</i>
<i>thou</i>	<i>thou led</i>
P. 2. <i>dūcite,</i>	<i>dūcimini, be</i>
<i>lead ye</i>	<i>ye led</i>

 494. FOURTH CONJ.—*Cont.*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
IMPERFECT	
s. <i>audīrem</i>	<i>audīrer</i>
<i>audirēs</i>	<i>audirēris, re</i>
<i>audiret</i>	<i>audirētur</i>
P. <i>audirēmus</i>	<i>audirēmur</i>
<i>audirētis</i>	<i>audirēmini</i>
<i>audirent</i>	<i>audirentur</i>

PERFECT	
s. <i>audīverim</i>	<i>audītus sim</i>
<i>audiveris</i>	<i>sīs</i>
<i>audiverit</i>	<i>sit</i>
P. <i>audīverimus</i>	<i>audītī simus</i>
<i>audiveritis</i>	<i>sītis</i>
<i>audiverint</i>	<i>sint</i>

PLUPERFECT	
s. <i>audīvissem</i>	<i>audītus essem</i>
<i>audivissēs</i>	<i>essēs</i>
<i>audivisset</i>	<i>esset</i>
P. <i>audivissēmus</i>	<i>audītī essēmus</i>
<i>audivissētis</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>audivissent</i>	<i>essent</i>

IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT	
s. 2. <i>audī, hear</i>	<i>audire, be</i>
<i>thou</i>	<i>thou heard</i>
P. 2. <i>audīte,</i>	<i>audīmini, be</i>
<i>hear ye</i>	<i>ye heard</i>

¹ *dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō*, have as present imperatives *dīc, dūc, fac, fer*; the regular form of other verbs ends in *-e*, as *gerō*, imperative *gere*.

491. FIRST CONJUGATION—Cont.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
FUTURE	
S. 3. <i>amātō, he</i>	<i>amātor, he</i>
<i>shall love</i>	<i>shall be loved</i>

P. 2. *amātōte, you* ———
shall love

3. *amantō, amantor, they*
they shall *shall be loved*
love

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

amāre, to love *amārī, to be*
loved

FUTURE

amātūrus esse, amātum irī, to
to be about to *be about to be*
love *loved*

PERFECT

amāvisse, to *amātus esse,*
have loved *to have been*
loved

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

amāns, antis, ———
loving

FUTURE

amāturus, GER. amandus,
um, about *to be loved*
to love

PERFECT

——— *amātus, having*
been loved, loved

492. SECOND CONJUGATION—Cont.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
FUTURE	
S. 3. <i>monētō, he</i>	<i>monētor, he</i>
<i>he shall</i>	<i>shall be ad-</i>
<i>advise</i>	<i>vised</i>

P. 2. *monētōte, you* ———
shall advise

3. *monentō, monentor,*
they shall *they shall*
advise *be advised*

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

monēre, to ad- *monērī, to be*
vise *advised*

FUTURE

monitūrus esse, monitum irī,
to be about to *to be about to*
advise *be advised*

PERFECT

monuisse, to *monitus esse, to*
have advised *have been ad-*
vised

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

monēns, entis, ———
advising

FUTURE

monitūrus, GER. monendus,
about to ad- *to be ad-*
vise *vised*

PERFECT

——— *monitus, having been*
advised, advised

493. THIRD CONJUGATION—*Cont.*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	FUTURE		
s. 2. dūcitō,	dūcitor, <i>thou</i>		
	<i>thou shalt lead</i>		<i>shalt be led</i>
s. 3. dūcitō, <i>he</i>	dūcitor, <i>he</i>		
	<i>shall lead</i>		<i>shall be led</i>
P. 2. dūcitōte, <i>ye</i>	—		
	<i>shall lead</i>		
P. 3. dūcuntō,	dūcuntor,		
	<i>they shall lead</i>		<i>they shall be led</i>

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

dūcere, *to lead* dūcī, *to be led*

FUTURE

ductūrus esse, ductum īrī, *to*
to be about to lead *be about to be led*

PERFECT

dūxisse, *to have led* ductus esse, *to have been led*

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

dūcēns, entis, —
leading

FUTURE

ductūrus, GER. dūcendus,
about to lead *to be led*

PERFECT

ductus, *hav-*
ing been led,
led

494. FOURTH CONJ.—*Cont.*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	FUTURE		
s. 2. audītō,	auditor, <i>thou</i>		
	<i>thou shalt hear</i>		<i>shalt be heard</i>
3. audītō, <i>he</i>	auditor, <i>he</i>		
	<i>shall hear</i>		<i>shall be heard</i>
P. 2. audītōte, *	—		
	<i>you shall hear</i>		
3. audiuntō,	audiuntor,		
	<i>they shall hear</i>		<i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

audīre, *to hear* audīrī, *to be heard*

FUTURE

audītūrus esse, auditum īrī,
to be about to hear *to be about to be heard*

PERFECT

audīvisse, *to have heard* audītus esse, *to have been heard*

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

audiēns, ientis, —
hearing

FUTURE

audītūrus, GER. audiendus,
about to hear *to be heard*

PERFECT

— audītus, *having*
been heard,
heard

491. FIRST CONJUGATION — *Cont.*

GERUND

GEN. amandī, *of loving*DAT. amandō, *for loving*ACC. amandum, *loving*ABL. amandō, *by loving*

SUPINE

amātum

amātū

492. SECOND CONJUGATION — *Cont.*

GERUND

GEN. monendī, *of advising*DAT. monendō, *for advising*ACC. monendum, *advising*ABL. monendō, *by advising*

SUPINE

monitum

monitū

495.

THIRD CONJUGATION

VERBS IN *iō*

PRIN. PARTS: capiō, ere, cēpī, captus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PRESENT

*I take, am taking, do take**Singular*

capiō

capis

capit

Plural

capimus

capitis

capiunt

PASSIVE

*I am taken, am being taken**Singular*

capior

caperis, re

capitur

Plural

capimur

capimini

capiuntur

IMPERFECT

I was taking, took, did take

capiēbam

capiēbās

capiēbat

capiēbāmus

capiēbātis

capiēbant

I was taken, was being taken

capiēbar

capiēbāris, re

capiēbātur

capiēbāmur

capiēbāmini

capiēbantur

FUTURE

I shall take

capiam

capiēs

capiet

capiēmus

capiētis

capient

I shall be taken

capiar

capiēris, re

capiētur

capiēmur

capiēmini

capientur

493. THIRD CONJUGATION—*Cont.*

GERUND

GEN.	dūcendī, <i>of leading</i>
DAT.	dūcendō, <i>for leading</i>
ACC.	dūcendum, <i>leading</i>
ABL.	dūcendō, <i>by leading</i>

SUPINE

ductum	ductū
--------	-------

494. FOURTH CONJ.—*Cont.*

GERUND

GEN.	audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>
DAT.	audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>
ACC.	audiendum, <i>hearing</i>
ABL.	audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>

SUPINE

audītum	audītū
---------	--------

495.

THIRD CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE—*Continued*

ACTIVE

PERFECT

PASSIVE

I have taken, took

I have been taken, I was taken

Singular

Plural

Singular

Plural

cēpī

cēpimus

captus sum

capti sumus

cēpisti

cēpistis

es

estis

cēpit

cēpērunt, ēre

est

sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had taken

I had been taken

cēperam

cēperāmus

captus eram

capti erāmus

cēperās

cēperātis

erās

erātis

cēperat

cēperant

erat

erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken

I shall have been taken

cēperō

cēperimus

captus erō

capti erimus

cēperis

cēperitis

eris

eritis

cēperit

cēperint

erit

erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam

capiāmus

capiar

capiāmur

capiās

capiātis

capiāris, re

capiāmini

capiat

capiant

capiātur

capiantur

SUBJUNCTIVE—*Continued*

IMPERFECT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris, re	caperēmini
caperēt	caperent	caperētur	caperēntur

PERFECT

cēperim	cēperimus	captus sim	capti simus
cēperis	cēperitis	sīs	sitis
cēperit	cēperint	sit	sint

PLUPERFECT

cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus essem	capti essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis	essēs	essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*Singular*2. cape, *take thou*capere, *be thou taken**Plural*2. capite, *take ye*capimini, *be ye taken*

FUTURE

*Singular*2. capitō, *thou shalt take*capitor, *thou shalt be taken*3. capitō, *he shall take*capitor, *he shall be taken**Plural*2. capitōte, *ye shall take*3. capiuntō, *they shall take*capiuntor, *they shall be taken*

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

capere, *to take*

capī, *to be taken*

FUTURE

captūrus esse, *to be about to take* captum īrī, *to be about to be taken*

PERFECT

cēpisse, *to have taken* captus esse, *to have been taken*

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

capiēns, ientis, *taking*

—

—

FUTURE

captūrus, *about to take*

GER. capiendus, *to be taken*

PERFECT

—

—

captus, *having been taken, taken*

GERUND

GEN. capiendī, *of taking*
 DAT. capiendō, *for taking*
 ACC. capiendum, *taking*
 ABL. capiendō, *by taking*

SUPINE

captum

captū

IRREGULAR VERBS

496. PRIN. PARTS : *sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

sum, I am
es, you are
est (he, she, it) is

Plural

sumus, we are
estis, you are
sunt, they are

IMPERFECT

eram, I was
erās, you were
erat, he was

erāmus, we were
erātis, you were
erant, they were

FUTURE

erō, I shall be
eris, you will be
erit, he will be

erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be

PERFECT

fui, I have been, was
fuistī, you have been, were
fuit, he has been, was

fuimus, we have been, were
fuistis, you have been, were
fuērunt } they have been, were
fuēre }

PLUPERFECT

fueram, I had been
fuerās, you had been
fuerat, he had been

fuerāmus, we had been
fuerātis, you had been
fuerant, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, you will have been
fuerit, he will have been

fuerimus, we shall have been
fueritis, you will have been
fuerint, they will have been

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>
PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerīmus</i>	<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuerīs</i>	<i>fuerītis</i>	<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>	<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	FUTURE
<i>es, be thou</i>	<i>estō, thou shalt be</i>
<i>este, be ye</i>	<i>estō, he shall be</i>
	<i>estōte, ye shall be</i>
	<i>suntō, they shall be</i>

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	<i>esse, to be</i>	—
PERF.	<i>fuisse, to have been</i>	—
FUT.	<i>futūrus esse, to be about to be</i>	<i>futūrus, about to be</i>

497. PRIN. PARTS : **possum, posse, potuī, am able, can**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES. <i>I am able, can</i>			
<i>possum</i>	<i>possumus</i>	<i>possim</i>	<i>possīmus</i>
<i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>	<i>possīs</i>	<i>possītis</i>
<i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>	<i>possit</i>	<i>possint</i>
IMPF. <i>I was able, could</i>			
<i>poteram</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>	<i>possem</i>	<i>possēmus</i>
FUT. <i>I shall be able</i>			
<i>poterō</i>	<i>poterimus</i>		

PERF. *I have been able, could*

potuī potuimus potuerim potuerīmus

PLUP. *I had been able,*

potueram potuerāmus potuissem potuissēmus

F. P. *I shall have been able*

potuerō potuerimus

INFINITIVE

PRES. posse, *to be able* PERF. potuisse, *to have been able*

498.

PRIN. PARTS : prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfuturus, *benefit*

INDICATIVE

Singular

Plural

SUBJUNCTIVE

Singular

Plural

PRES. *I benefit*

prōsum

prōsumus

prōsim

prōsīmus

prōdes

prōdestis

prōsis

prōsītis

prōdest

prōsunt

prōsit

prōsint

IMPF. prōderam

prōderāmus

prōdessem

prōdessēmus

FUT. prōderō

prōderimus

PERF. prōfuī

prōfuimus

prōfuerim

prōfuerīmus

PLUP. prōfueram

prōfuerāmus

prōfuissem

prōfuissēmus

F. P. prōfuerō

prōfuerimus

IMPERATIVE

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste

FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōdesse

PERF. prōfuisse

FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUT. prōfutūrus

499. PRIN. PARTS :

Volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*
 Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*
 Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nolunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nolēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, ēs, etc.	nōlam, ēs, etc.	mālam, ēs, etc
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nolueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	noluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālīm
	velis	nōlis	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālīt
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālīnt
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	noluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissē	noluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	——	nōlī	——
		nōlīte	
FUT.	——	[nōlītō, etc.]	——

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	——	——
-------	--------	----	----

500. PRIN. PARTS : eō, ire, ii, itum, go

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	eō	īmus	eam	ī	īte
	īs	ītis			
	it	eunt			
IMPF.	ībam, ibās, ibat, etc.		īrem	{ itō	ītōte
				{ itō	euntō
FUT.	ībō, ibis, ibit, etc.		——		
PERF.	iī, istī, iit, etc.		ierim		
PLUP.	ieram		issem		
F. P.	ierō				

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	īre	īēns, euntis
PERF.	isse	itum
FUT.	itūrus esse	itūrus
	GERUND	SUPINE
GEN.	eundī	
DAT.	eundō	
ACC.	eundum	itum
ABL.	eundō	——

501.

PRIN. PARTS : **fiō, fierī, factus sum**, *be made, become, happen*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	fiō	——	fiam	fī	fīte
	fīs	——			
	fit	fiunt			
IMPF.	fiēbam		fierem		
FUT.	fiam, fiēs, etc.		——		
PERF.	factus sum		factus sim		
PLUP.	factus eram		factus essem		
F. P.	factus erō				

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	fieri	GER. faciendus
PERF.	factus esse	PERF. factus
FUT.	factum iri	

502. PRIN. PARTS : **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, *bear, carry*

	INDICATIVE			
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris, re	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
IMPF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram, ēs, etc.		ferar, ēris, etc.	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	—
FUT.	lāturus	GER. ferendus
	—	PERF. lātus

GERUND

GEN.	ferendī
DAT.	ferendō
ACC.	ferendum
ABL.	ferendō

SUPINE

—
—
lātum
lātū

503.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRIN. PARTS : **hortor**, **hortārī**, **hortātus sum**, *urge, entreat*
vereor, **verērī**, **veritus sum**, *fear*
sequor, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**, *follow*
potior, **potirī**, **potitus sum**, *get possession of*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris, re	verēris, re	sequeris, re	potīris, re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

hortandī, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potītum
hortātū	veritū	secūtū	potītū

504. FIRST OR ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amātūrus	sum, <i>I am about to love</i>
IMPF.	amātūrus	eram, <i>I was about to love</i>
FUT.	amātūrus	erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>
PERF.	amātūrus	fuī, <i>I have been or was about to love</i>
PLUP.	amātūrus	fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>
F. P.	amātūrus	fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amātūrus	sim
IMPF.	amātūrus	essem
PERF.	amātūrus	fuerim
PLUP.	amātūrus	fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amātūrus	esse
PERF.	amātūrus	fuisse

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

PRES.	monitūrus	sum, <i>I am about to advise</i>
	ductūrus	sum, <i>I am about to lead</i>
	captūrus	sum, <i>I am about to take</i>
	auditūrus	sum, <i>I am about to hear, etc.</i>

505. SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amandus	sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved</i>
IMPF.	amandus	eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
FUT.	amandus	erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>

INDICATIVE— *Continued*

- PERF. **amandus** fuī, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
 PLUP. **amandus** fueram, *I had had to be loved*
 F. P. **amandus** fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. **amandus** sim
 IMPF. **amandus** essem
 PERF. **amandus** fuerim
 PLUP. **amandus** fuisset

INFINITIVE

- PRES. **amandus** esse, *to have to be loved*
 PERF. **amandus** fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

- PRES. **monendus** sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*
dūcendus sum, *I am to be, must be, led*
capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*
audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard, etc.*

ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abl.</i>	ablative.	<i>loc.</i>	locative.
<i>acc.</i>	accusative.	<i>m.</i>	masculine.
<i>adj.</i>	adjective.	<i>n., neut.</i>	neuter.
<i>adv.</i>	adverb.	<i>neg.</i>	negative.
<i>comp.</i>	comparative.	<i>nom.</i>	nominative.
<i>conj.</i>	conjunction.	<i>num.</i>	numeral.
<i>dat.</i>	dative.	<i>part.</i>	participle.
<i>def.</i>	defective.	<i>pass.</i>	passive.
<i>dem.</i>	demonstrative.	<i>perf.</i>	perfect.
<i>dep.</i>	deponent.	<i>pl., plur.</i>	plural.
<i>determ.</i>	determinative.	<i>pr.</i>	proper.
<i>dim.</i>	diminutive.	<i>prep.</i>	preposition.
<i>f.</i>	feminine.	<i>pres.</i>	present.
<i>fut.</i>	future.	<i>pron.</i>	pronoun.
<i>gen.</i>	genitive.	<i>refl.</i>	reflexive.
<i>impers.</i>	impersonal.	<i>rel.</i>	relative.
<i>indecl.</i>	indeclinable.	<i>sing.</i>	singular.
<i>indef.</i>	indefinite.	<i>subjv.</i>	subjunctive.
<i>inter.</i>	interrogative.	<i>subst.</i>	substantive.
<i>intr.</i>	intransitive.	<i>sup.</i>	superlative.
<i>irr.</i>	irregular.	<i>tr.</i>	transitive.

VOCABULARY

LATIN — ENGLISH

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

ā, ab, <i>prep. w. abl.</i> , from, by, with, at, on, in.	acclivitās, ātis (acclivis), <i>f.</i> , ascent, slope.
abditus . See abdō .	accurrō, ere, accurrī, accursum (ad + currō , run), <i>intr.</i> , run up, hasten to.
abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus (ab + dō , place), <i>tr.</i> , put away, conceal.	accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + causa), <i>tr.</i> , accuse, reproach.
abiciō, ere, abiēcī, abiectus , <i>tr.</i> , throw, hurl.	ācer, ācris, ācre , sharp, keen, eager, fierce.
ablātus . See auferō .	ācerrimē . See ācriter .
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus , <i>intr.</i> , be away, be distant, be absent.	aciēs, aciēī, f , edge; line of battle.
ac . See atque .	ācriter (ācer), <i>adv.</i> , sharply, eagerly, fiercely; <i>comp.</i> ācrius ; <i>sup.</i> ācerrimē .
Acca, ae, f., <i>pr. name</i> , Acca Larentia, foster mother of Romulus and Remus.	āctus . See agō .
accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus (ad + cēdō), <i>intr.</i> , go near, come near, approach.	ad, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , to, toward, at, near, against; according to; <i>w. numerals</i> , about.
accendō, ere, accendī, accēnsus (ad + candeō , glow), <i>tr.</i> , set on fire; accēnsus , burning.	addō, addere, addidī, additus (ad + dō , place), <i>tr.</i> , add.
accidō, ere, accidī, — (ad + cadō), <i>intr.</i> , happen.	addūcō, ere, addūxī, adductus (ad + dūcō), <i>tr.</i> , lead to, lead, influence.
acciō, ire, accivī, accītus (ad + cieō , set in motion), <i>tr.</i> , summon, invite.	adeō, adīre, adiī, aditum (ad + eō), <i>intr.</i> , go to, approach.
accipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptus (ad + capiō), <i>tr.</i> , receive; suffer, undergo.	adficiō, ere, adfēcī, adfectus (ad + faciō), <i>tr.</i> , affect; poenā — , punish.
acclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + clāmō , cry), <i>tr.</i> , shout, cry out.	adhibeō, ēre, adhibuī, adhibitus (ad + habeō), <i>tr.</i> , call in, use.
acclivis, e (ad + clivus , slope), rising.	aditus, ūs (adeō), <i>m.</i> , approach, access.

- administrō, āre, āvī, ātus** (**ad + ministrō**, manage), *tr.*, manage, direct, administer.
- adolēscō, ere, adolēvī, adultus** (**ad + olēscō**, grow), *intr.*, grow up.
- adorior, irī, adortus sum** (**ad + orior**), *intr.*, attack.
- adōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus** (**ad + ōrnō**, equip), *tr.*, equip, adorn.
- adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus** (**ad + sum**), *intr.*, be present, aid.
- Aduatuci, ōrum, m.**, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- adolēscēns, ēntis** (**adolēscō**), young; *as subst.*, young man, youth.
- adveniō, ire, advēnī, adventum** (**ad + veniō**), *intr.*, come to, arrive, reach.
- adventus, ūs** (**adveniō**), *m.*, arrival, approach.
- adversus, a, um** (**advertō**, turn to), in front, opposite; **adversō colle**, up the hill.
- adversus** (**adversus**), *prep. w. acc.*, opposite, against, facing.
- aedificium, ī** (**aedificō**), *n.*, building.
- aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus** (**aedis + faciō**), *tr.*, build, construct.
- aedis or aedēs, is, f.**, temple; *pl.*, aedes rēgiae, palace.
- aeger, aegra, aegrum**, sick.
- aegrē** (**aeger**), *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
- aegritūdō, īnis** (**aeger**), *f.*, sickness, vexation, mortification.
- aequāliter** (**aequālis**, equal), *adv.*, uniformly, equally.
- aequus, a, um**, equal, favorable.
- aestās, ātis, f.**, summer.
- aetās, ātis, f.**, age.
- ager, agrī, m.**, field, land, territory.
- agger, aggeris** (**ad + gerō**), *m.*, mound, agger.
- aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum** (**ad + gradior**, go), *tr.*, go against, attack.
- agmen, agminis** (**agō**), *n.*, army on the march; **primum agmen**, van; **novissimum agmen**, rear.
- agnōscō, ere, agnōvī, agnitus** (**ad + [g]nōscō**, know), *tr.*, recognize.
- agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, tr.**, drive, lead, move forward, do, treat; **triumphum agere**, celebrate a triumph.
- agricola, ae** (**ager + colō**), *m.*, farmer.
- aiō, ais, ait, aiunt, def.**, say.
- Alba or Alba Longa, ae, f.**, an ancient Latin town.
- Albānus, a, um** (**Alba**), Alban; *as subst.*, **Albānus, ī, m.**, an Alban.
- albus, a, um**, white.
- aliēnus, a, um** (**alius**), another's, unfavorable, strange.
- aliquis and aliquī, aliqua, aliquid and aliquod, indef. pron.**, some one, any one.
- alius, alia, aliud**, other, another; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . some, some . . . others; **aliī aliam in partem**, some in one direction, some in another.
- Allobrogēs, um, m.**, a Celtic tribe of Gaul.
- alō, ere, aluī, altus, tr.**, nourish, strengthen.
- altāria, ium, n. pl.**, altar.
- alter, altera, alterum**, the other (*of two*).
- altitūdō, inis** (**altus**), *f.*, height, depth.
- altus, a, um** (**alō**), high, deep.
- alveus, ī, m.**, basket, trough.

Ambiānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Belgian tribe.
amicitia, ae (amicus), *f.*, friendship, alliance.

amicus, ī (amō), *m.*, friend, ally.

āmittō, ere, āmisī, āmissus (ā + mittō), *tr.*, lose.

amō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, love, like.

āmoveō, ēre, āmōvī, āmōtus (ā + moveō), *tr.*, take away, remove.

amplificō, āre, āvī, ātus (amplus + faciō), *tr.*, increase, extend.

amplus, a, um, large, extensive, ample.

Amūlius, ī, *m.*, king of Alba Longa.

ancile, is, *n.*, a small oval shield.

angustiae, ārum (angustus), *f. pl.*, narrowness, narrow pass.

angustus, a, um, narrow, contracted.

animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus (animus + advertō, turn toward), *tr.*, turn one's mind to, notice; **animadvertere in**, punish.

animal, ālis (anima, life), *n.*, animal.

animus, ī, *m.*, mind, disposition, courage, spirit; **in animō esse, in animō habēre**, have in mind, intend.

annus, ī, *m.*, year.

ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, before.

antepōnō, ere, anteposui, antepositus (ante + pōnō), *tr.*, put before.

antequam, *conj.*, before, until.

antiquitus (antiquus), *adv.*, in former times, anciently.

antiquus, a, um, old, ancient.

ānulus, ī, *m.*, ring.

anxius, a, um (angō, vex), troubled, anxious.

aperiō, īre, aperui, apertus, *tr.*, open.

apertus, a, um (aperiō), open.

appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, call, name.

Appius, ī, *m.*, a Roman surname.

apprehendō, ere, apprehendī, apprehēnsus (ad +prehendō, seize), lay hold of, seize.

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + propinquus), approach, come near.

apud, *prep. w. acc.*, among, in the presence of.

aqua, ae, *f.*, water.

Aquilēia, ae, *f.*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

aquilō, ōnis, *m.*, the north wind.

Aquitānia, ae, *f.*, a division of southern Gaul.

Aquitānus, ī, *m.*, an Aquitanian.

āra, ae, *f.*, altar.

Arar, Araris, *m.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.

arbitr, arbitri, *m.*, witness.

arbitror, āri, ātus sum (arbitr), *intr.*, think, consider, suppose.

arceō, ēre, arcui, —, *tr.*, shut up, hinder, prevent.

Ariovistus, ī, *m.*, a German king.

arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.

armilla, ae, *f.*, bracelet.

armō, āre, āvī, ātus (arma), *tr.*, arm, equip.

arō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, plow.

ars, artis, *f.*, art.

artūs, artuum, *m. pl.*, joints.

arx, arcis (arceō), *f.*, stronghold, citadel.

asper, aspera, asperum, rough, fierce.

āstūtia, ae (āstūtus, cunning), *f.*, shrewdness, cunning.

asylum, ī, *n.*, asylum, place of refuge.

at, *conj.*, but, yet.

Athēnae, ārum, *f.*, Athens.

atque, ac, *conj.*, and.

Atrebās, ātis, *m.*, one of the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe.

attingō, ēre, attigī, attāctus (ad + tangō, touch), *tr.*, touch, join, border on.

attonitus, a, um, thunderstruck, astounded.

auctoritās, ātis (augeō), *f.*, authority, influence, reputation.

audācter (audāx, bold), *adv.*, boldly, courageously; *comp.* audācius; *sup.* audācissimē.

Audecumborius, ī, *m.*, an ambassador of the Remi.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *intr.*, dare.

audiō, īre, audīvī, audītus, *tr.*, hear.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (ab + ferō), *tr.*, take away, carry off.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *tr.*, increase.

augurium, ī (augur, soothsayer), *n.*, divination, augury.

aureus, a, um (aurum, gold), golden.

auspiciū, ī (avis + speciō, look), *n.*, divination by noting the cries or flight of birds.

ausus. *See* audeō.

autem, *conj.*, but, moreover, however.

auxilium, ī, *n.*, help, aid.

Aventīnus, a, um, of the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

āvertō, ere, āvertī, āversus (ab + vertō), turn away, remove.

avis, is, *f.*, bird.

avus, ī, *m.*, grandfather, ancestor.

Axona, ae, *f.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Aisne.

B

Baleāris, e, Balearic.

Belgae, ārum, *m. pl.*, Belgians, a tribe of northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, a, um (bellum), warlike.

Bellovacī, ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.

bellum, ī, *n.*, war; bellum inferre, wage war.

bene (bonus), *adv.*, well; *comp.* melius, *sup.* optimē.

beneficiū, ī (bene + faciō), *n.*, favor, service.

benīgnē (benīgnus, kind), *adv.*, kindly.

bibō, ere, bibī, —, *tr.*, drink.

Bibrax, Bibractis, *n.*, a town of the Remi.

Bōiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe associated with the Helvetiī.

bonus, a, um, good.

Bratuspantium, ī, *n.*, a town of the Bellovacī.

brevis, e, short, brief.

brevitās, ātis (brevis), *f.*, shortness.

Britannia, ae, *f.*, Britain.

C

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *tr.*, fall, die, perish.

caedēs, is (caedō), *f.*, slaughter.

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus, *tr.*, cut to pieces, slay.

caelum, ī, *n.*, sky, heavens.

Caesar, aris, *m.*, a family name of the Julian gens; Gāius Iūlius Caesar, 100–44 B.C., the conqueror of Gaul.

calamitās, ātis, *f.*, disaster, defeat.

campus, ī, *m.*, plain.

capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *tr.*, take, capture, seize; form (a plan).

Capitōlium, ī, *n.*, the Capitol, a great temple of Jupiter at Rome, and the hill on which it stood.

captīvus, ī (capiō), *m.*, captive.

caput, capitis, *n.*, head.

cārē (cārus), *adv.*, dearly.

careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *intr. w. abl.*, be without, be in need of, lack.

- carpentum, ī, n.,** two-wheeled carriage.
carrus, ī, m., wagon, cart.
Carthāgō, inis, f., a great Phoenician city on the northern coast of Africa.
cārus, a, um, dear.
casa, ae, f., hut.
Cassius, ī, m., a Roman name.
castellum, ī (dim. of castrum), n., fort, redoubt.
Casticus, ī, m., a Sequanian chief.
castrum, ī, n., fort; *pl.* castra, ōrum, camp.
cāsus, ūs (cadō), m., falling, chance, misfortune.
catulus, ī, m., cub.
causa, ae, f., reason, cause, case; **quā dē causā,** why, for this reason; **causā, w. gen.,** for the sake of, for, on account of.
cavea, ae (cavus, hollow), f., cage.
cecidī. See cadō.
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, intr., go, yield, retire, retreat.
celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick.
celeritās, ātis (celer), f., speed, quickness.
celeriter (celer), adv., quickly, swiftly; *comp.* celerius; *sup.* celerrimē.
Celtae, ārum, m., Celts, one of the three great peoples of Gaul.
cēna, ae, f., meal, dinner.
centum, indecl., hundred.
centuria, ae (centum), f., a division of the people, or army, containing one hundred; century.
centuriō, ōnis (centuria), m., centurion, commander of a century.
certāmen, inis (certō, contend), n., contest.
certus, a, um (cernō, perceive), certain, appointed; **certiōrem facere, inform.**
cēterī, ae, a, pl., the rest, the others.
cibus, ī, m., food.
Cimbri, ōrum, m., a Germanic tribe.
circā, prep. w. acc., around, about.
circiter, prep. w. acc., about, nearly.
circum, adv. and prep. w. acc., about, around.
circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus (circum + dō), tr., surround.
circumiciō, ere, circumiēcī, circum- iectus (circum + iaciō), tr., throw about, place around.
circumveniō, irī, circumvēnī, circum- ventus (circum + veniō), tr., come around, surround.
cis, prep. w. acc., on this side of.
citerior, citerius, hither.
citrā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.
cīvicus, a, um (cīvis), civic.
cīvis, is, m. and f., citizen.
cīvitās, ātis (cīvis), f., citizenship, state.
clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātus (clāmō, cry out), tr., cry out, shout.
clāmor, ōris (clāmō, cry out), m., shouting, cry.
classis, is, f., fleet.
Claudia, ae, f., sister of Appius Claudius Pulcher.
Claudius, ī, m., a Roman family name; **Appius Claudius Pulcher, consul 249 B.C.**
claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, shut, close.
clēmēntia, ae (clēmēns, mild), f., kindness, mildness.
cliēns, clientis, m. and f., dependent, vassal.
coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum, def., began.

cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus (con + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize, learn, discover, ascertain.

cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōactus (con + agō), drive together, collect, force, compel.

cohors, cohortis, f., cohort (the tenth part of a legion).

cohortor, ārī, ātus sum (con + hortor), *tr.*, exhort, encourage.

collis, is, m., hill.

colō, ere, coluī, cultus, tr., cultivate, worship.

commeātus, ūs, m., provisions, supplies.

comminus (con + manus), *adv.*, hand to hand.

committō, ere, commīsī, commissus (con + mittō), *tr.*, commit, intrust; join, begin (battle).

commodē (commodus, useful), *adv.*, advantageously, easily.

commoveō, ēre, commōvī, commōtus (con + moveō), to move, influence, disturb.

compār, comparis (con + pār), fitting, suitable.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + parō), *tr.*, prepare, provide.

compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus (con + pleō, fill), *tr.*, fill up, complete.

complūrēs, ia, many, very many, a great many.

comprehendō, ere, comprehendī, comprehēsus (con + prehendō, seize), *tr.*, seize, arrest.

con. See *cum*.

concēdō, ere, concessī, concessus (con + cedō), yield, grant, allow, permit.

concidō, ere, concidī, — (con + cadō), *intr.*, fall, be killed.

concidō, ere, concidī, concisus (con + caedō, slay), *tr.*, cut down, kill.

conciliō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., gain, win, procure.

concilium, ī, n., assembly, council.

condemnō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + damnō), *tr.*, condemn.

condiciō, ōnis (condicō, agree), *f.*, agreement, proposal, terms.

condō, ere, condidī, conditus (con + dō, put), *tr.*, found, establish.

condūcō, ere, condūxī, conductus (con + dūcō), *tr.*, bring together, hire.

cōnferō, cōnferre, cōntulī, conlātus (con + ferō), *tr.*, bring together, gather; **sē cōnferre**, betake one's self, go.

confertus, a, um (conferciō, crowd), crowded, dense.

cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (con + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete, furnish, wear out.

cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + firmō, strengthen), *tr.*, strengthen, establish, assure, encourage.

cōnfligō, ere, cōnflixī, cōnfllictus, intr., contend, fight.

cōnfugiō, ere, cōnfūgī, —, intr., flee.

congressus, ūs (congregior, meet), *m.*, meeting.

congruō, ere, congruī, —, intr., agree, tally.

coniciō, ere, coniecī, coniectus (con + iaciō), *tr.*, throw, hurl.

coniungō, ere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus (con + iungō), *tr.*, join.

coniūnx, coniugis (coniungō), *f.*, wife.

coniūrātiō, ōnis (coniūrō), *f.*, conspiracy.

coniūrātus, ī (coniūrō), *m.*, conspirator.

coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + iūrō, swear), *intr.*, conspire, plot.

conlātus. *See* conferō.

conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + locō, place), *tr.*, place, put, station.

conloquium, ī (conloquor), *n.*, interview, conference.

conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum (con + loquor, speak), *intr.*, speak together, confer.

cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *tr.*, attempt, try.

cōnsanguineus, ī (con + sanguis, blood), *m.*, relative, kinsman.

cōnscribō, ere, cōnscripsī, cōnscriptus (con + scribō), *tr.*, levy, enroll.

cōnsecrō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + sacrō, set apart), *tr.*, consecrate.

cōnsentiō, īre, cōnsēnsī, cōnsēnsus (con + sentiō, feel), *intr.*, agree, conspire.

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecutus sum (cōn + sequor), *tr.*, pursue, overtake, obtain.

cōnserō, ere, cōnseruī, cōnseruus (con + serō, bind), *tr.*, join (battle).

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + servō), *tr.*, keep safe, preserve.

cōnsiderō, āre, āvī, ātus, consider, examine, look at closely.

cōnsidō, ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum (con + sidō, seat), *intr.*, settle, take up an abode.

cōnsilium, ī (cōnsulō), *n.*, plan, advice, prudence.

cōnsimilis, e (con + similis), very like.

cōnsistō, ere, cōnstitī, — (con +

sistō, place), *intr.*, take a stand, hold a position, stop.

cōnspectus, ūs (conspiciō), *m.*, sight, view.

cōnspiciō, ere, cōnspēxī, cōnspectus (con + speciō, look), *tr.*, see, perceive.

cōnstantia, ae (cōnstō, stand), *f.*, firmness.

cōnstituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus (con + statuō), *tr.*, place, erect, construct, station, determine, appoint.

cōnsuēscō, ere, cōnsuēvī, consuētus (con + suēscō, be accustomed), *intr.*, be accustomed.

cōnsuētūdō, īnis (cōnsuēscō), *f.*, custom, habit.

cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*, consul.

cōnsulō, ere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus, ask advice, consult.

contendō, ere, contendī, contentus (con + tendō), *intr.*, strive, struggle; hasten, hurry; march.

contentiō, ōnis (contendō), *f.*, contest, controversy.

continenter (continueō), *adv.*, continually, constantly.

continueō, ēre, continuī, contentus (con + teneō), *tr.*, hold in, hold together, restrain, hem in, keep.

contiō, ōnis (conveniō), *f.*, meeting.

contrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, against, opposite.

contulī. *See* cōnferō.

cōnūbium, ī (con + nūbō, marry), *f.*, marriage.

conveniō, īrē, convēnī, conventus (con + veniō), *intr.*, come together, assemble; *impers. convenit*, it is fit, agreed.

convertō, ere, convertī, conversus
(con + vertō), turn (about), change;

signa convertere, face about.

convocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + vocō),
tr., call together, summon.

coorior, irī, coortus sum (con +
orior), *intr.*, rise, break out.

cōpia, ae, f., supply, abundance; *pl.*,
forces, troops.

Corinthus, ī, f., Corinth.

Cornēlius, ī, m., the name of a Roman
family. See **Cossus**.

cornū, ūs, n., horn, flank, wing.

corōna, ae, f., crown.

corpus, corporis, n., body.

corruō, ere, corruī, — (con + ruō, fall),
intr., fall, be slain.

Cossus, ī, m., Aulus Cornēlius Cossus,
consul 343 B.C.

cottidiānus, a, um (cottidiē), daily.

cottidiē, adv., daily.

crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditus, tr., be-
lieve, trust.

cremō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., burn.

creō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., appoint,
choose.

Crētēs, Cretum, m. pl., Cretans.

crux, crucis, f., cross, gallows.

culpō, āre, āvī, ātus (culpa, fault),
tr., blame.

cultus, see colō.

cum, prep. w. abl., with; *in compo-
sition*, con-, co-; *conj.*, when, since,
although, because.

cupidus, a, um (cupiō), desirous, eager.

cupiō, ere, cupivī or cupiī, cupītus,
tr., wish, desire, be eager for.

cūr, adv., why.

cūra, ae, f., care.

Curēs, Curium, f. pl., a Sabine town.

cūria, ae, f., senate.

cursus, ūs (currō, run), *m.*, course.

curūlis, e (currus, chariot), curule.

cūstōdia, ae (cūstōs, guard), *f.*, guard.

cūstōdiō, īre, cūstōdivī, cūstōditus
(cūstōs, guard), *tr.*, watch, guard.

D

damnātiō, ōnis (damnō), *f.*, condem-
nation.

damnō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., condemn,
sentence.

dē, prep. w. abl., from, down from;
concerning, in regard to, for; about.

dea, ae, f., goddess.

dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (dē +
habeō), *tr.*, owe; *with inf.*, ought.

decem, indecl., ten.

dēcernō, ere, dēcervī, dēcētus (dē +
cernō, separate), *tr.*, decide, decree.

decertō, āre, āvī, ātus (dē + certō,
contend), *intr.*, fight, contend.

Decius, ī, m., Pūblius Decius Mūs,
consul 340 B.C.

dēclivis, e (dē + clivus, slope), sloping.

dēcervī. See dēcernō.

dēcurrō, ere, dē(cu)currī, dēcursum
(dē + currō, run), *intr.*, run down,
hasten down.

dēditō, ōnis (dēdō), *f.*, surrender.

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus (dē +
dō), *tr.*, give up, surrender.

dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, tr.,
defend, protect.

dēfēnsor, ōris (dēfendō), *m.*, de-
fender.

dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus (dē +
ferō), *tr.*, carry off; bestow, confer.

dēficiō, ere, dēfēcī, dēfectus (dē +
faciō, *tr. and intr.*, fail, be lacking.

deinceps, adv., successively, next,
thereafter.

deinde (**dē + inde**), *adv.*, afterwards, next.

dēlābor, **dēlābī**, **dēlāpsus sum** (**dē + lābor**), slip, *intr.*, glide or fall down.

dēlectō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, please, delight.

dēligō, **ere**, **dēlēgī**, **dēlēctus** (**dē + legō**, collect), *tr.*, select, choose.

Delphī, **ōrum**, *m.*, Delphi.

dēmittō, **ere**, **dēmīsī**, **dēmissus** (**dē + mittō**), *tr.*, send down, let down ; **sē dēmittere**, jump.

dēmōnstrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**dē + mōnstrō**, show), *tr.*, point out, show, mention.

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally.

dēpōnō, **ere**, **dēposuī**, **dēpositus** (**dē + pōnō**), *tr.*, lay down, give up.

dēpopulor, **ārī**, **ātus sum** (**dē + populor**), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

dēprecātor, **ōris** (**dēprecor**, mediate), *m.*, intercessor ; **eō dēprecātore**, through his mediation.

dēscendō, **ere**, **dēscendī**, **dēscēsum** (**dē + scandō**, climb), *intr.*, descend.

dēscribō, **ere**, **dēscripsī**, **dēscriptus** (**dē + scribō**), *tr.*, describe.

dēsistō, **ere**, **dēstitī**, — (**dē + sistō**, stand), *intr.*, cease, leave off.

dēsum, **dēesse**, **dēfuī**, **dēfutūrus** (**dē + sum**), *intr.*, be lacking, fail.

deus, **ī**, *m.*, god.

dēvincō, **ere**, **dēvīcī**, **dēvictus** (**dē + vincō**), *tr.*, subdue, conquer.

dēvoveō, **ēre**, **dēvōvī**, **dēvōtus** (**dē + voveō**), *tr.*, vow, devote.

dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum**, right ; **dextra**, **ae**, *f.*, right hand.

dī-. See **dis-**.

dīcō, **ere**, **dīxī**, **dictus**, say, tell, speak ; impose (a fine).

diēs, **ēī**, *m. and f.*, day.

difficilis, **e** (**dis + facilis**), difficult, hard.

difficultās, **ātis** (**difficilis**), *f.*, difficulty.

diligenter (**dīligō**, esteem), *adv.*, carefully, attentively.

diligentia, **ae** (**dīligō**, esteem), *f.*, carefulness, diligence, industry.

dīmētior, **īrī**, **dīmēnsus sum**, *tr.*, measure.

dīmīcō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *intr.*, fight, contend.

dīmīttō, **ere**, **dīmīsī**, **dīmissus** (**dis + mittō**), *tr.*, send off, dismiss, let go.

dīripiō, **ere**, **dīripuī**, **dīreptus** (**dis + rapiō**), *tr.*, lay waste, pillage, ravage.

dis-, **dī-**, *insep. neg. prefix*, apart, not, un-.

discēdō, **ere**, **discessī**, **discessum** (**dis + cēdō**), *intr.*, depart, withdraw, leave.

discipulus, **ī** (**discō**), *m.*, pupil.

discō, **ere**, **dedicī**, —, *tr.*, learn.

discurrō, **ere**, **dis(cu)currī**, **discursum** (**dis + currō**, run), *intr.*, run in different directions.

dissimilis, **e** (**dis + similis**), unlike, dissimilar.

dissimulō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**dissimilis**), *tr.*, conceal, disguise.

distineō, **ere**, **distinuī**, **distentus** (**dis + teneō**), *tr.*, keep apart.

distribuō, **ere**, **distribuī**, **distribūtus** (**dis + tribuō**, assign), *tr.*, distribute, divide.

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time ; *comp.* **diūtius**, *sup.* **diūtissimē**.

Dīviciācus, **ī**, *m.*, a chief of the Haedui.

dīvidō, **ere**, **dīvisī**, **dīvisus**, *tr.*, divide, separate.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, tr., give; **poenās dare,** suffer punishment.

doceō, ēre, docuī, doctus, tr., teach, inform.

dolōsē (dolus, trick), adv., craftily, by trickery.

domesticus, a, um (domus), domestic; from their own country.

dominus, ī, m., master, lord.

domus, ūs or ī, f., house, home; **domī,** at home; **domum,** (to) home, homeward.

dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus (dōnum), tr., present, give.

dōnum, ī (dō), n., gift.

dubius, a, um, doubtful.

ducentī, ae, a (duo + centum), two hundred.

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, tr., lead, bring.

Duilius, ī, m., Gāius Duilius, a Roman general, victor over the Carthaginians in a naval battle, 260 B.C.

dum, conj., while, until.

Dumnorix, īgis, m., brother of the Haeduan Diviciacus.

duo, duae, duo, two.

duodecim, indecl., twelve.

duodēvigintī, indecl., eighteen.

dux, ducis (dūcō), m., guide, leader, general.

E

ē. See ex.

ēditus, a, um (ēdō), high, elevated.

ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus (ex + dō), tr., give out, give birth to, bear.

edō, edere or ēsse, ēsī, ēsus, tr., eat.

ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus (ex + dūcō), tr., lead out, lead.

efferō, effere, extulī, ēlātus (ex + ferō), tr., carry out.

effugiō, ere, effūgī, — (ex + fugiō), tr. and intr., escape.

effundō, ere, effūdī, effūsus (ex + fundō, pour), tr., pour forth, spread out, overflow.

Egeria, ae, f., a nymph reputed to give revelations to Numa.

ēgī. See agō.

ego, meī, pers. pron., I.

eius. See is.

ēliciō, ere, ēlicuī, ēlicitus (ex + laciō, allure), tr., lure forth, bring out, call down.

ēligō, ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus (ex + legō, choose), tr., select, pick out, choose.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + migrō, migrate), intr., emigrate, remove.

enim, conj., for.

ēnūtiō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + nūtiō), tr., announce, reveal.

eō, ire, iī, itum, intr., go.

eō (is), adv., there, to that place, thither.

eques, equitis (equus), m., horseman; *pl.*, cavalry.

equester, equestris, equestre (eques), of the cavalry, equestrian.

equitātus, ūs (eques), m., cavalry.

equus, ī, m., horse.

ēripiō, ere, ēripuī, ēreptus (ex + rapiō), tr., snatch away, save.

erō, erīm, etc. See sum.

ēruptiō, ōnis (ērumpō, break forth), f., breaking out, sally.

esse. See sum and edō.

et, conj., and; **et...et,** both...and.

etiam (et + iam), conj., besides, still, even.

Europa, ae, f., Europe.

ēvādō, ēre, ēvāsī, ēvāsus (ex + vādō, go), intr., go out, escape.

ex or **ē**, *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from, of ;
ūnā ex parte, on one side ; **ex itinere**, on the march.
excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + cōgitō**, think), *tr.*, think out, contrive.
exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum (**ex + eō**), *intr.*, go out, depart, leave.
exercitō, āre, āvī, ātus (**exerceō**, train), *tr.*, exercise, train.
exercitus, ūs (**exerceō**, train), *m.*, army.
existimō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + aestimō**, consider), *tr.*, think, suppose, believe.
expeditus, a, um (**expediō**, free), unincumbered, without baggage.
expellō, ere, expulī, expulsus (**ex + pellō**) *tr.*, drive out, expel.
explōrātōr, ōris (**explōrō**), *m.*, scout.
explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, search, ascertain, reconnoiter.
expōnō, ere, exposuī, expositus (**ex + pōnō**), *tr.*, expose, abandon.
expositiō, ōnis (**expōnō**), *f.*, exposure, abandonment.
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + pugnō**), *tr.*, capture, take by storm, storm.
exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + spectō**), look, wait for, await, expect, wait to see.
exstinguō, ere, exstīnxī, exstinctus (**ex + stinguō**, put out), *tr.*, extinguish, destroy, kill.
exterus, externa, exterum, outer ; *comp.* exterior, *sup.* extrēmus, last, end of.
extrā, prep. w. acc., outside of, beyond.
extrēmus. See **exterus**.

F

faber, fabrī, m., mechanic, workman, artisan.

fabricō, āre, āvī, ātus (**faber**), *tr.*, make, construct, build.
fābula, ae (**for**, speak), *f.*, story.
facile (**facilis**), *adv.*, easily ; *comp.* **facilius**, *sup.* **facillimē**.
facilis, e (**faciō**), easy.
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *tr.*, make, do, form, build ; **verba facere**, speak.
factum, ī (**faciō**), *n.*, deed.
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus, *tr.*, deceive ; **spem sē fefellisse**, that they were disappointed in their hope.
familia, ae (**famulus**, slave), *f.*, household, vassals.
fāstus, a, um (**fās**, right), legal, court—. **Faustulus, ī, m.**, the shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus.
fefellī. See **fallō**.
fēmina, ae, f., woman.
ferāx, ferācis (**ferō**), fertile, productive.
ferē, adv., nearly, about, almost.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.*, bear, carry ; **lēgem ferre**, propose, institute a law.
ferreus, a, um (**ferrum**, iron), of iron, iron ; **ferreae manūs**, grappling-irons.
fertilitās, ātis (**fertilis**, fertile), *f.*, fertility.
ferus, a, um, fierce, wild, barbarous.
fidēs, eī (**fidō**, trust), *f.*, faith, confidence, trust ; **in fidem venīre**, put one's self under the protection of.
fidus, a, um, faithful, loyal.
fīlia, ae, f., daughter.
fīlius, ī, m., son.
fīnis, is, m., limit, end, boundary ; *pl.*, territory.
fīnitimus, a, um (**fīnis**), adjoining, neighboring ; *as subst.*, **fīnitimus, ī, m.**, neighbor.

fiō, fierī, factus sum (*used as passive of faciō*), be made, become; **certior fierī**, be informed.

flāmen, flāminis, m., Flamen, a priest devoted to the worship of one special god.

flūmen, flūminis (fluō), n., river.

fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxus, intr., flow.

foculus, ī (dim. of focus, hearth), m., fire pan, brazier.

fōns, fontis, m., fountain, spring.

fore = futūrum esse.

foret = esset.

fōrma, ae, f., shape, form.

fors, fortis, f., chance; **forte**, by chance; **forte erat effusus**, happened to have overflowed.

fortis, e, brave.

fortiter (fortis), adv., bravely.

fortūna, ae (fors), f., fortune, good fortune.

forum, ī, m., market place, forum.

fossa, ae (fodiō, dig), f., ditch, trench.

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

frūmentārius, a, um (frūmentum), of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies of grain, provisions.

frūmentum, ī (fruor), n., grain.

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, tr., enjoy.

fuga, ae, f., flight; **in fugam dare**, put to flight.

fugīō, ere, fugī, —, intr., flee, run away.

fulmen, inis (fulgeō, flash), n., thunderbolt, lightning.

fūmus, ī, m., smoke.

fūnāle, is (fūnis, cord), n., torch.

funditor, ōris (funda, sling), m., slinger.

furor, ōris (furō, rage), m., rage, madness.

fūrtum, ī (fūr, thief), n., theft.

futūrus. See sum.

G

G. = Gāius, ī, m., a Roman name.

Galba, ae, m.: (1) a lieutenant of Caesar; (2) a king of the Suesiones.

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.

Gallus, a, um, Gallic; *as subst.*, **Gallus, ī, m.**, a Gaul.

Garumna, ae, f., a river of Gaul, modern Garonne.

Gaurus, ī, m., a mountain of Campania.

geminus, a, um, twin, two-headed; *as subst.*, **geminī, ōrum, m. pl.**, twins.

Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, modern Geneva.

gener, generī, m., son-in-law.

gēns, gentis (gignō, bear), f., tribe, nation, race.

genus, generis (gens), n., kind, class.

Germānus, ī, m., German.

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, tr., bear, carry, carry on, wage; pass, go on, take place; **mātre[m] sē gessit**, bore herself *or* acted as a mother.

gladius, ī, m., sword.

gracilis, e, slender.

Graecia, ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, ī, m., Greek.

grātia, ae (grātus), f., favor, influence; kindness; **grātiā, w. gen.**, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

grātulor, āri, ātus sum (grātus), tr., congratulate.

grātus, a, um, pleasing, acceptable, agreeable.

gravis, e, heavy, hard.

graviter (gravis), adv., severely.

H

habeō, ēre, habuī, habitus, tr., have, hold; consult (*auspīcia*).

Haeduus, ī, m., Haeduan.

Hannibal, alis, m.: (1) a Carthaginian commander defeated by Duilius; (2) a Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar, 247-183 B.C., defeated by Scipio at Zama, 202 B.C.

hasta, ae, f., spear.

haud, adv., not.

Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian; as subst., Helvetiī, ōrum, m. pl., Helvetians.

hīberna, ae (hiems), n. pl., winter quarters.

hīc, haec, hoc, dem. pron., this; the latter; he, she, it.

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus (hiems), intr., winter, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, f., winter.

hinc (hīc), adv., hence; **hinc . . . hinc,** in one place . . . in another, here . . . there.

Hispānia, ae, f., Spain.

hodiē (hīc + diēs), adv., to-day.

homō, hominis, m. and f., man, human being.

honor, ōris, m., honor.

hōra, ae, f., hour.

hortor, ārī, ātus sum, tr., urge, encourage.

hortus, ī, m., garden.

hospes, hospitis, m. and f., guest, host.

Hostīlius, ī, m., the name of a Roman family; **Hostus Hostīlius,** a general in the time of Romulus; **Tullus Hostīlius,** third king of Rome.

hostis, is, m., enemy.

Hostus. See **Hostīlius.**

hūc (hīc), adv., hither, to this place.

humilis, e (humus), low.

humus, ī, f., ground; **humī,** on the ground.

I

iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, tr., throw, hurl; construct (*aggerem*).

iactitō, āre, —, — (iactō, boast), intr., boast, brag.

iam, adv., now, already, soon.

lāniculum, ī, m., one of the hills of Rome, west of the Tiber.

lānuārius, ī (lānus), m., January.

lānus, ī, m., Janus, an old Latin divinity, represented with two faces.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

Iccius, ī, m., one of the Remi.

īdem, eadem, idem (is + dem), dem. pron. and adj., the same.

identidem, adv., again and again.

idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.

īdūs, īduum, f. pl., the Ides (15th of March, May, July, and October, 13th of the other months).

ignis, is, m., fire.

īgnōminia, ae, f., dishonor, disgrace.

īgnōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (īgnārus, ignorant), tr., not to know.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. and adj., that; he, she, it; the former.

īmāgō, inis, f., likeness, semblance.

imbellis, e (in neg. + bellum), unwarlike, cowardly.

imbuō, ere, imbuī, imbūtus, tr., wet; inspire.

immineō, ēre, imminuī, —, intr., overhang.

immittō, ere, immīsī, immissus (in + mittō), tr., send into, let into, hurl.

impedīmentum, ī (impediō), n., hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

- impediō, īre, impedīvī, impedītus** (in + pēs), *tr.*, entangle, hinder, impede.
- impellō, ere, impulī, impulsus** (in + pellō), *tr.*, urge, impel, incite.
- impendeō, ēre, —, —** (in + pendeō, hang), *intr.*, overhang.
- imperātor, ōris** (imperō), *m.*, commander, commander in chief, general.
- imperātum, ī** (imperō), *n.*, order, command.
- imperium, ī** (imperō), *n.*, order, command, power, government, rule; **nova imperia**, revolution.
- imperō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + parō), *tr.*, command, order, rule.
- impetrō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *tr.*, obtain, secure, gain.
- impetus, ūs** (impetō, attack), *m.*, assault, attack, onset.
- impius, a, um** (in *neg.* + pius, reverent), wicked, impious.
- impōnō, ere, imposuī, impositus** (in + pōnō), *tr.*, place in.
- imprōvīsus, a, um** (in *neg.* + prōvīsus, foreseen), sudden; **dē imprōvīsō**, unexpectedly, suddenly.
- īmus.** See **īferus**.
- in-**, *negative inseparable prefix*, un-, not.
- in**, *prep.* *to acc. and abl.*: *to acc.*, into, against, toward, forward; *to abl.*, in, on, upon, over.
- incendō, ere, incendi, incēsus** (in + candeō, glow), *tr.*, set fire to, burn.
- incidō, ere, incidī, —** (in + cadō), *intr.*, occur.
- incitō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + citō, move swiftly), *tr.*, urge on, incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.
- inclinō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *tr. and intr.*, bend, incline, yield.
- inclutus, a, um**, famous.
- incola, ae** (incolō), *m.* and *f.*, inhabitant.
- incolō, ere, incoluī, —, tr.**, dwell, live.
- incolumis, e**, unharmed, safe.
- incrēdibilis, e** (in *neg.* + crēdibilis, believable), incredible.
- increpitō, āre, āvī, ātus** (increpō), *tr.*, exclaim, upbraid, taunt.
- increpō, āre, increpuī, increpitus**, sound, scold, exclaim.
- incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + causa), *tr.*, accuse, blame.
- inde, adv.**, thence, thereupon, then.
- index, indicis** (indicō), *m.*, sign, mark.
- indiciū, ī** (indicō), *n.*, information; **per indicium**, by informers.
- indicō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + dicō, declare), *tr.*, announce, reveal.
- indīcō, ere, indixī, indictus** (in + dicō), *tr.*, proclaim, announce, appoint.
- īnfēlix, īnfēlicis** (in *neg.* + fēlix, happy), unhappy, ill-fated.
- īnferior.** See **īferus**.
- īfero, īferre, intulī, inlātus** (in + ferō), *tr.*, carry in, bring in; **sē īferre**, betake one's self; **sīgna īferre**, charge.
- īferus, a, um**, below; *comp.* **īnferior**, lower, inferior; *sup.* **īnfīmus** or **īmus**, lowest, bottom of, foot of, at the foot of.
- īnfestō, āre, āvī, ātus** (īnfestus), *tr.*, annoy.
- īnfestus, a, um**, hostile.
- īnfīmus.** See **īferus**.

influo, ere, **inflūxī**, **influxus** (in + fluō), *intr.*, flow into, empty into.

ingēns, **ingentis**, huge, vast.

ingredior, **ingredī**, **ingressus sum** (in + gradior, go), *intr.*, go into, enter.

iniciō, ere, **iniēcī**, **iniectus** (in + iaciō), *tr.*, put in.

inimicus, a, um (in *neg.* + amīcus), hostile.

iniquus, a, um (in *neg.* + aequus), unfavorable, disadvantageous.

initium, ī (ineō, begin), *n.*, beginning.

iniūria, ae, *f.*, injury, violence.

inopia, ae (inops, without means), *f.*, want, lack.

inquam, *def.*, say.

inrideō, ēre, **inrisī**, **inrisus** (in + rideō, laugh), *tr.*, laugh at, jeer, ridicule.

īnsānus, a, um (in *neg.* + sānus, sound), mad.

īnsequor, **īnsequī**, **īnsecūtus sum** (in + sequor), *tr.*, follow, pursue.

īnsidiae, ārum (īnsidiō, sit in), *f. pl.*, ambush, treachery.

insideō, ēre, **īnsēdī**, **īnseusus** (in + sedeō), *tr.*, occupy.

īnsidior, āri, ātus sum (īnsidiae), *tr.*, lie in wait for, ambush.

īnsignis, e (sīgnum), remarkable, distinguished.

īnsiliō, īre, **īnsilūi**, **īnsultus** (in + saliō, leap), *tr.*, leap on.

īnstar, *n. indecl.*, likeness; **īnstar murī**, like a wall.

īnstituō, ere, **īnstituī**, **īnstitūtus** (in + statuō), *tr.*, form, establish.

īnstitūtum, ī (īnstituō), *n.*, purpose, custom, institution.

īnstruō, ere, **īnstrūxī**, **īnstrūctus** (in + struō, build), *tr.*, arrange, draw up, form.

īnsula, ae, *f.*, island.

īnsum, **īnesse**, **īnfui**, **īnfutūrus** (in + sum), *intr.*, be in, be among.

intellegō, ere, **intellēxī**, **intellēctus** (inter + legō), *tr.*, learn, perceive, know.

intempestus, a, um (in *neg.* + tempus), stormy.

inter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among, during; **dare inter sē**, exchange; **cohortātī inter sē**, encouraging one another.

intercēdō, ere, **intercessī**, **intercessus** (inter + cēdō), *intr.*, lie between, intervene.

intereā (inter + is), *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile.

interficiō, ere, **interfēcī**, **interfectus** (inter + faciō), *tr.*, kill.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

interior, **interius** (inter), inner, interior of; *sup.* **intimus**.

interscindō, ere, **interscīdī**, **inter-scissus** (inter + scindō, break down), *tr.*, cut down, destroy.

intersum, **interesse**, **interfui**, **interfutūrus** (inter + sum), *intr.*, be among, be present.

intimus. See **interior**.

intrā (inter), *prep. w. acc.*, in, during.

intrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, enter.

intrōducō, ere, **intrōdūxī**, **intrōductus** (intrō, within + dūcō), *tr.*, lead in.

intrōrsus (intrō, within + versus), *adv.*, inside, within.

intulī. See **īnferō**.

inūtilis, e (in *neg.* + ūtilis), useless.

inveniō, īre, invēnī, inventus (in + veniō), *tr. and intr.*, come upon, find.

inveterāscō, āre, inveterāvī, inveterātus (in + veterāscō, grow old), *intr.*, become established.

invictus, a, um (in *neg.* + vincō), unconquered.

invītus, a, um, unwilling.

Iovi. See **Iuppiter**.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *determ. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; very; even.

īrātus, a, um (īrāscor, be angry), angered, in anger.

is, ea, id, *determ. pron. and adj.*, he, she, it; this, that; **is quī**, he (one, a man) who.

iste, ista, istud, *determ. pron. and adj.*, that (of yours).

ita (is), *adv.*, thus, so.

Ītalia, ae, f, Italy.

itaque (is), *conj.*, and so, accordingly, therefore.

item (is), *adv.*, likewise, also.

iter, itineris, n., journey, march; road, way; **iter facere**, march; **ex itinere**, on the march; **magnum iter**, forced march.

iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.

itum, itūrus. See **eō**.

iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, tr., order, bid, command.

iūdicium, ī (iūdex, judge), n., judgment, trial.

iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus (iūdex, judge), tr., judge.

iugum, ī (iungō), n., yoke; **sub iugum mittere**, send under the yoke (*made of spears crossed, in token of complete surrender*).

iūmentum, ī (iungō), n., pack animal. **iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctus, tr.**, join, fasten together.

iūnior, comp. of **iuvenis**.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter, chief of the Roman gods.

Iūra, ae, f., the Jura Mountains, reaching from the Rhine to the Rhone.

iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī (iūs, law + iūrō, swear), n., oath.

iūstitia, ae (iūstus, just), f., justice, uprightness.

iuvenis, e, young; *comp.* **iūnior**; *as subst.* **iuvenis, is, m.**, young man, youth.

iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, tr., help, aid.

L

Labiēnus, ī, m., one of Caesar's lieutenants.

labor, ōris, m., labor, work.

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (labor), intr., work, toil, suffer, be hard pressed.

laccēsō, ere, laccēsivī, laccēsītus, tr., attack, harass.

lacus, ūs, m., lake.

laetus, a, um, glad.

laevus, a, um, left.

lapis, lapidis, m., stone.

largitīō, ōnis (largior, lavish), f., liberality; bribery.

lateō, ēre, latuī, —, intr., be concealed, lie hid.

Latinus, a, um, Latin.

lātītūdō, inis (lātus), f., width, breadth.

Latobrigī, ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe near the Helvetii.

latrō, ōnis, m., robber, brigand.

lātus, a, um, broad, wide.

lātus. See **ferō**.

latus, lateris, *n.*, side, flank.
 laudō, āre, āvī, ātus (laus, praise), *tr.*, praise, commend.
 • lēgātīō, ōnis (legō, commission), *f.*, embassy, deputation.
 lēgātus, ī (legō, commission), *m.*, ambassador, envoy; lieutenant.
 legiō, ōnis (legō), *f.*, legion.
 legō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *tr.*, choose.
 Lemannus, ī, lacus Lemannus, Lake of Geneva.
 lēnis, e, smooth, gentle.
 levitās, ātis (levis, light), *f.*, lightness, fickleness.
 lēx, lēgis (legō), *f.*, law; lēgem ferre, propose, establish a law.
 liber, librī, *m.*, book.
 liber, libera, liberum, free; *as subst.* liberī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, children.
 liberō, āre, āvī, ātus (liber), *tr.*, liberate, free.
 libertās, ātis (liber), *f.*, freedom, liberty.
 licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is allowed, permitted.
 lineāmentum, ī (linea, line), *m.*, feature.
 littera, ae (linō, smear), *f.*, letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, letters (epistles), documents.
 locus, ī, *m.*; *pl.*, locī and loca, place, position.
 longē (longus), *adv.*, far, far off.
 longus, a, um, long, distant.
 lūcus, ī, *m.*, grove.
 lūdibrium, ī (lūdus), *n.*, jest, mockery.
 lūdicer, lūdica, lūdicum (lūdus), sportive, playful.
 lūdus, ī, *m.*, play, sport, game.
 lūna, ae, *f.*, moon.

lupa, ae, *f.*, she-wolf.
 lūstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, purify; review, inspect.
 lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak.
 lūxuria, ae, *f.*, excess, luxury.

M

māchina, ae, *f.*, engine, contrivance.
 magis (*comp. of multum*), *adv.*, more, rather.
 magister, magistrī, *m.*, master, teacher.
 magistrātus, ūs (magister), *m.*, magistrate, officer.
 magnitūdō, inis (magnus), *f.*, size, greatness.
 magnopere (magnus + opus), *adv.*, very greatly.
 magnus, a, um, large, great; *comp.* maior, *sup.* maximus; maior nātū, older; maximus nātū, oldest.
 maior. See magnus.
 male (malus), *adv.*, badly; *comp.* peius, *sup.* pessimē.
 mālō, mälle, mālui (magis + volō), *tr. and intr.*, be more willing, prefer.
 malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked; *comp.* peior, *sup.* pessimus.
 Māmurius, ī, *m.*, a Roman smith in the time of Numa.
 mandātum, ī (mandō), *n.*, order, command.
 mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, order, command.
 maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *intr.*, remain, stay.
 Mānēs, ium, *m. pl.*, the Manes, shades of the dead.
 Mānlius, ī, *m.*, Titus Mānlius Torquātus, consul 343 B.C.

mānsuētūdō, inis (**mānsuētus**, tame),
f., mildness, clemency.

manus, ūs, f., hand, band; **manūs**
ferreae, grappling irons.

Mārcus, ī, m., a Roman name.

mare, maris, n., sea; **marī**, by sea.

maritimus, a, um (**mare**), of the sea,
 maritime.

Mārs, Martis, m., Mars, the Roman
 god of war.

māter, mātris, f., mother; **mātem**
sē gessit, bore herself, acted like, a
 mother.

mātrimōnium, ī (**māter**), *n.*, mar-
 riage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere**,
 marry.

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, intr., hasten,
 hurry.

maximē (**maximus**), *adv.*, very
 greatly, especially.

maximus. *See magnus.*

Maximus, ī, m., a Roman cognomen.
See Valerius.

mē, meī. *See ego.*

medius, a, um, middle; **per mediās**
cūstōdēs, through the midst of the
 guards; **quem medium**, the middle
 of which.

melior. *See bonus.*

melius. *See bene.*

memoria, ae, f., memory.

mēns, mentis, f., mind.

mēnsa, ae, f., table.

mēnsis, is, m., month.

mercātor, ōris (**mercor**, trade), *m.*,
 trader, merchant.

Mercurius, ī, m., Mercury, god of
 trade, and messenger of the gods.

mergō, ere, mersī, mersus, tr., dip, sink.

metus, ūs, m., fear, terror.

meus, a, um, *poss. adj.*, my, mine.

mihi. *See ego.*

mīles, militis, m., soldier.

militāris, ē (**mīles**), military.

mille, indecl. adj. and noun, thou-
 sand; *pl.* **millia**, always *noun*;
mille passūs, mille passuum, a
 Roman mile.

mīnimē (**minimus**). *See parum.*

minimus, a, um (*used as sup. of*
parvus), smallest, least.

mīnor, minus (*see parvus*), smaller,
 less; **mīnor nātū**, younger.

minus (*used as comp. of parum*), *adv.*,
 less; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless;
sī minus, if not.

mīrābilis, e (**mīror**, wonder), won-
 derful.

mīrāculum, ī (**mīror**, wonder), *n.*,
 wonder, prodigy.

mīrus, a, um, wonderful, surprising.

miser, misera, miserum, wretched,
 poor.

miserē (**miser**), *adv.*, wretchedly.

mītīgō, āre, āvī, ātus (**mītis**, mild
 + **agō**), *tr.*, soften, civilize.

mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, tr., send, hurl.

mōbilitās, ātis (**mōbilis**, change-
 able), *f.*, fickleness.

moenia, moenium, n. pl., walls, for-
 tifications.

moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, tr.,
 warn, advise.

monitus, ūs (**moneō**), *m.*, warning,
 counsel, suggestion.

mōns, montis, m., mountain.

mora, ae, f., delay.

morbus, ī, m., sickness, illness; **orbō**
extinctus, died a natural death.

moriōr, morī, mortuus sum, intr., die.

moror, ārī, ātus sum (**mora**), *intr.*,
 delay, hinder.

mors, mortis, f., death.

mōs, mōris, m., custom, habit.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, tr., move, influence; **castra movēre**, break camp.

mox, adv., soon.

Mūcius, ī, m., the name of a Roman family; **Gāius Mūcius Scaevola**, a Roman who attempted to kill Porsena.

Mūcius, a, um (Mūcius), Mucian.

mulier, mulieris, f., woman, wife.

multa, ae, f., fine, penalty.

multitūdō, inis (multus), f., numbers, multitude.

multō (abl. of multus), adv., much.

multum (multus), adv., much, greatly.

multus, a, um, much; *pl.*, many;

multā nocte, late at night; **ad**

multam noctem, till late at night.

Mūnātius, ī, m., **Lūcius Mūnātius Plancus**, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

mūnimentum, ī (mūniō), n., defense, fortification.

mūniō, īre, mūnīvī or mūniī, mūnītus, tr., fortify, defend.

mūnitiō, ōnis (mūniō), f., fortification.

mūnus, eris, n., gift, reward.

mūrus, ī, m., wall.

N

nactus. See nancīscor.

nam, conj., for.

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, intr., be born, be produced; rise.

nātiō, ōnis (nāscor), f., nation, tribe, people.

nātū (nāscor), in age; **maior nātū**, older; **minor nātū**, younger.

nātūra, ae (nāscor), f., nature, character.

nauta, ae (nāvis), m., sailor.

nāvālis, e (nāvis), of ships, naval.

nāvis, is, f., ship.

-ne, enclitic, sign of an interrogative.

nē, conj., not, so that not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that.

necō, āre, āvī, ātus (nex) tr., kill, put to death.

nefastus, a, um (nefas, crime), unhallowed; unpropitious; **diēs nefastus**, a day on which public business could not be transacted.

negō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. and intr., deny, say . . . not.

negōtium, ī, n., business, affair; **quicquam negotī**, any trouble.

nēmō, nēminem (nē + homō), m. and f., no one, nobody.

nemus, nemoris, n., grove.

nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson, descendant.

neque, nec, conj., and not, but not; **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor.

Nervīi, ōrum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

neuter, neutra, neutrum (nē + uter), neither (of two).

nex, necis, f., death, murder.

niger, nigra, nigrum, black.

nil, indecl. n., nothing.

nihilō, adv., in no respect; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless.

nisi (nē + sī), conj., if not, unless, except.

nōbilis, e (nōsco, know), noble.

nōbilitās, ātis (nōbilis), f., nobility, nobles.

noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, tr., hurt, injure, harm.

nocturnus, a, um (nox), by night, in the night.

nōlo, nōlle, nōluī (nē + volo), tr. and intr., not to wish, be unwilling; **nōlitē, w. infin.,** do not.

nōmen, nōminis (nōsco, know), n., name.

nōminō, āre, āvī, ātus (nōmen), tr., name, call.

nōn, adv., not.

nōndum, adv., not yet.

nōnnūllus, a, um (nōn + nūllus), some, several.

Nōrēia, ae, f., a town of the Norici, modern Neumarkt.

Nōricus, a, um, Norican; ager Nōricus, a country between the Danube and the Alps.

nōs, nōstrum, pers. pron., we, ourselves.

noster, nostra, nostrum (nōs), poss. adj., our, ours; *pl.*, **nostrī, ōrum,** our men, our troops.

novem, indecl., nine.

Noviodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Suessiones.

novus, a, um, news; novissimum, last; **novissimum agmen,** the rear.

nox, noctis, f., night; **multā. nocte,** late at night; **ad multam noctem,** till late at night.

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūdus, bare), tr., make bare, clear.

nūllus, a, um (nē + ūllus), no, not any, none, no one.

num, interrog. particle, implying the answer 'no.'

Numa, ae, m. See Pompilius.

numerus, ī, m., number.

Numida, ae, m., Numidian.

Numitor, ōris, m., king of Alba Longa, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.

numquam (nē + umquam, ever), adv., never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntius), tr., report, announce.

nūntius, ī, m., messenger.

nūper, adv., recently, lately.

nūsquā (nē + usquam, anywhere), adv., nowhere, on no occasion.

O

ob, prep. w. acc., for, on account of, because of.

obaeratus, ī (ob + aes, money), m., debtor.

obdūcō, ere, obdūxī, obductus (ob + dūcō), tr., extend, make.

obruō, ere, obruī, obrutus (ob + ruō, rush), tr., overwhelm, bury, crush.

obses, obsidis (obsideō), m., hostage, pledge.

obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus (ob + sedeō), tr., besiege.

obtimeō, ēre, obtinūī, obtentus (ob + teneō), tr., possess, obtain, retain.

obveniō, īre, obvēnī, obventum (ob + veniō), intr., come to, meet, come.

obsum, obesse, obfuī, obfutūrus (ob + sum), be against, injure.

occāsus, ūs (occidō, fall), m., setting (of the sun).

occidō, ere, occidī, occīsus (ob + caedō, cut down), tr., cut down, kill, slay.

occultus, a, um, hidden; in occultō, concealed.

occupō, āre, āvī, ātus (ob + capiō), tr., take possession of, seize, occupy.

Ōceanus, *ī, m.*, ocean.

Ocelum, *ī, n.*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

octō, *indecl.*, eight.

oculus, *ī, m.*, eye.

odium, *ī (odī, hate), n.*, hatred, enmity.

omnīnō (*omnis*), *adv.*, altogether, at all.

omnis, *e*, all, every, whole.

opīniō, *ōnis (opīnor, think), f.*, notion, belief, impression.

oportet, **oportēre**, **oportuit**, *impers.*, it is necessary, it is proper.

oppidānus, *ī (oppidum), m.*, inhabitant of a town, townsman.

oppidum, *ī, n.*, walled town.

opprimō, **ere**, **oppressī**, **oppressus** (*ob + premō, press*), *tr.*, crush, fall upon.

oppugnātiō, *ōnis (oppugnō), f.*, assault, storm, siege.

oppugnō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (*ob + pugnō*), *tr.*, attack, besiege.

ops, **opis**, *f.*, aid; *pl.*, resources, wealth.

optimē (*optimus*), best, excellently. *See bene.*

optimus, *a, um, sup. of bonus.*

optiō, *ōnis (optō), f.*, choice.

opus, **operis**, *n.*, work, labor, fortification.

optō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, wish, choose.

ōrātiō, *ōnis (ōrō), f.*, speech, words.

ōrdinō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (*ōrdō*), *tr.*, arrange, regulate.

ōrdō, *ōrdinis, m.*, line, rank.

Orgetorix, *īgis, m.*, a chief of the Helvetii.

orior, **orīrī**, **ortus sum**, *intr.*, rise.

ōrnātus, *ūs (ōrnō, adorn), m.*, attire, decoration.

ōrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (*ōs*), *tr.*, beseech, beg.

ortus. *See orior.*

ōs, *ōris, n.*, mouth, face.

P

P. = Pūblius.

pācō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (*pāx*), *tr.*, pacify, subdue.

paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

palūs, *ūdis, f.*, marsh, swamp.

pandō, **ere**, **pandī**, **passus**, *tr.*, spread out; **passīs manibus**, with outstretched hands.

pār, **paris**, equal (to).

parātus, *a, um (parō)*, prepared, ready.

pāreō, **ēre**, **paruī**, **pāritūrus**, *intr. w. dat.*, obey.

parō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, prepare, provide.

pars, **partis**, *f.*, part, side, direction.

parum, *adv.*, little; *comp. minus*; *sup. minimē*.

parvulus, *a, um (parvus)*, very little; *as subst. parvulus, ī, m.*, little fellow.

parvus, *a, um*, little, small; *comp. minor*; *sup. minimus*.

passus. *See pandō and patior.*

passus, *ūs, m.*, pace; **mille passūs**, **mille passuum**, a mile.

pāstor, *ōris (pāscō, feed), m.*, shepherd.

pateō, **ēre**, **patuī**, —, *intr.*, be open, extend.

pater, **patris**, *m.*, father.

patior, **patī**, **passus sum**, *tr.*, suffer, allow, endure.

patria, *ae (patrius), f.*, country, native land.

patrius, a, um (pater), ancestral.

paucī, ōrum, few.

paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time.

paululum (paulus, small), *adv.*, a little, somewhat.

pāx, pācis, f., peace.

peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, *intr.*, transgress, offend.

pecūnia, ae (pecus), *f.*, money.

pecus, pecoris, n., cattle, herd.

pedes, peditis (pēs), *m.*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry.

Pedius, ī, m., Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

peior, *comp. of malus*.

peius, *comp. of male*.

pelle, ere, pepulī, pulsus, tr., drive out, expel, rout, conquer.

per, prep. w. acc., through, over, by, by means of.

peragrō, āre, āvī, ātus (per + ager), *tr.*, wander through, roam over.

perdūcō, ere, perdūxī, perductus (per + dūcō), *tr.*, lead, lead through, construct.

perennis, e (per + annus), perpetual, never failing.

perficiō, ere, perfēcī, perfectus (per + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete.

perfidus, a, um (per + fidus), faithless, treacherous.

perīclitor, ārī, ātus sum, tr., make trial of, try.

perīculum, ī, n., danger.

perītus, a, um, skillful.

permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus (per + mittō), *tr.*, give up, intrust, permit.

permovēō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus (per + movēō), *tr.*, move, arouse, influence, alarm.

perpetuō (perpetuus, continuous), *adv.*, continually, forever.

perrumpō, ere, perrūpī, pērruptus (per + rumpō, break), *tr.*, break through.

perspiciō, ere, perspēxī, perspectus (per + speciō, see), *tr.*, see through.

persuadeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsus (per + suādeō, persuade), *tr. w. dat.*, persuade, prevail on.

pertineō, ēre, pertinui, — (per + teneō), *intr.*, extend, pertain, relate.

pertrāctus. See pertrahō.

pertrahō, ere, pertrāxī, pertrāctus (per + trahō), *tr.*, drag, lead.

pervenīō, īre, pervēnī, perventus (per + veniō), *intr.*, arrive at, reach.

pēs, pedis, m., foot.

pessimē, *sup. of male*.

pessimus, *sup. of malus*.

petō, ere, petīvī or petiī, petītus, tr., aim at, seek, ask, demand, request.

pietās, ātis (pius, pious), *f.*, devotion, loyalty.

piger, pigra, pigrum, slow, lazy.

pīgnus, pīgnoris, n., pledge, assurance.

pīlum, ī, n., javelin.

pirus, ī, f., pear tree.

Plancus, ī. See Mūnātius.

plānitēs, ēī (plānus, flat), *f.*, plain, level ground.

plēbēs, ēī, or plēbs, plēbis, f., common people.

plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, most, very many.

plūrimus, a, um (sup. of multus), most, very many; **plūrimum posse**, be very powerful, have most influence, be supreme.

plūs, comp. of multum.

plūs, plūris (*comp. of multus*), more;
pl., several, more.

pōculum, ī, n., drinking cup.

poena, ae, f., punishment, penalty;

poenās dare, suffer punishment.

Poenī, ōrum, m. pl., Carthaginians.

polliceor, ērī, pollicitus sum, promise.

Pompēius, ī, m., Pompey.

Pompilius, ī, m., Numa Pompilius,
 second king of Rome.

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, tr., place,
 put, pitch (a camp).

pōns, pontis, f., bridge.

poposcī. See poscō.

populor, ārī, ātus sum (*populus*),
tr., ravage, lay waste.

populus, ī, m., people.

Porsena, ae, f., king of Clusium in
 Etruria.

porta, ae, f., gate.

portō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., carry,
 bring.

portus, ūs, m., port, harbor.

poscō, ere, poposcī, —, tr., ask, de-
 mand.

possideō, ēre, possēdī, —, tr., hold,
 occupy.

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able,
 can; **plūrimum posse**, be very
 powerful.

post, adv., afterwards, later.

post, prep. w. acc., after, behind.

postea (*post + is*), *adv.*, afterwards.

posterus, a, um, following, next;
comp. posterior; *sup. postrēmus*.

postquam (*post + quam*), *conj.*,
 after.

postrīdiē (*posterus + diēs*), *adv.*, on
 the following day.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., demand,
 ask.

potēns, potentis (*pres. part. of*
possum), powerful, able.

potentātus, ūs (*potēns*), *m.*, supreme
 power, rule.

potestās, ātis (*potis*, able), *f.*, power,
 authority, privilege.

potior, potīrī, potītus sum (*potis*,
 able), *w. abl.*, get possession of.

prae, prep. w. abl., before.

praebeō, ēre, praebuī, praebitus
 (*prae + habeō*), *tr.*, furnish, sup-
 ply.

praecinō, ere, praecinūī, — (*prae +*
canō, sing), *tr.*, play before.

praeda, ae, f., booty, spoil.

praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus
 (*prae + faciō*), *tr.*, set over, put
 in charge of.

praelūceō, ēre, praelūxī, — (*prae +*
lūceō, shine), *intr.*, shine before.

praemittō, ere, praemīsī, praemissus
 (*prae + mittō*), *tr.*, send ahead,
 dispatch.

praemium, ī, n., reward.

praescribō, ere, praescripsī, praes-
criptus (*prae + scribō*), *tr.*, direct,
 order.

praesidium, ī (*praesideō*, defend),
n., guard, defense, garrison.

praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praes-
titus (*prae + stō*, stand), *intr.*,
 stand before, surpass, excel; *tr.*,
 show.

praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefu-
tūrus (*prae + sum*), *intr.*, be at
 head of, be in charge of, command.

praetereā (*praeter*, beyond + *is*),
adv., besides.

praeveniō, īre, praevēnī, praeventus
 (*prae + veniō*), *tr.*, come before,
 outstrip, forestall.

prātum, *i*, *n.*, field, meadow.

prīmō (**prīmus**), *adv.*, at first.

prīmum (**prīmus**), *adv.*, at first;

quam prīmum, as soon as possible.

prīmus, *a*, *um*, first; **prīmā lūce**, at daybreak; **prīmus dēvicit**, was the first to conquer.

prīnceps, **prīncipis** (**prīmus + capiō**), *m.*, chief, leader, author.

prior, **prius** (**prō**), former, previous.

priusquam (**prius**, sooner + **quam**), *conj.*, before, sooner than.

prīvātus, *a*, *um* (**prīvō**, deprive), private.

prō, *prep. w. abl.*, before, in front of, for, in behalf of, in proportion to, in place of; *comp.* **prior**; *sup.* **pri-mus**.

Proca, *ae*, *m.*, a king of Alba Longa.

prōcēdō, *ere*, **processī**, **prōcessum** (**prō + cēdō**), *intr.*, go forward, proceed, advance.

procul, *adv.*, far off, from afar.

prōcūrō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (**prō + cūrō**), *tr.*, take care of, attend to; avert.

prōditiō, *ōnis* (**prōdō**, betray), *f.*, treachery, treason.

proelium, *i*, *n.*, battle.

profectiō, *ōnis* (**proficīscor**), *f.*, setting forth, departure.

proficīscor, **proficīscī**, **profectus sum** (**proficiō**, advance), *intr.*, set out, go, march.

profugiō, *ere*, **profūgī**, — (**prō + fugiō**), *intr.*, flee, escape.

prōgredior, **prōgredi**, **prōgressus sum** (**prō + gradior**, go), *intr.*, proceed, advance.

prohibeō, *ēre*, **prohibuī**, **prohibitus** (**prō + habeō**), *tr.*, keep (away) from, prevent.

prōiciō, *ere*, **prōiēcī**, **prōiectus** (**prō + iaciō**), *tr.*, throw forth, abandon.

prōmittō, *ere*, **prōmīsī**, **prōmissus** (**prō + mittō**), *tr.*, promise.

prope, *adv.*, near, nearly; *comp.* **propior**; *sup.* **proximus**.

properō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *intr.*, hasten.

propīnquitās, *ātis* (**propīnquus**, near), *f.*, nearness, relationship.

propior, **propius** (**prope**), nearer.

propius (*comp. of prope*), *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, nearer.

prōpōnō, *ere*, **prōposuī**, **prōpositus** (**prō + pōnō**), *tr.*, set forth, declare, propose.

propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, **prōfutūrus** (**prō + sum**), *intr.*, be of service or use to, benefit.

prōtinus, *adv.*, ahead, directly.

prōturbō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (**prō + turbō**, confuse), *tr.*, drive away, dislodge, repulse.

prōvincia, *ae*, *f.*, province.

prōvolō, *āre*, *āvī*, — (**prō + volō**), *intr.*, fly forth, rush out.

proximē (**proximus**), *adv.*, last, recently.

proximus, *a*, *um* (**prope**), nearest, next; in **proximō**, near by.

prūdēns, **prūdētis** (**prō + vidēns**), foreseeing, wise.

prūdentē (**prūdēns**), *adv.*, wisely.

pūblicus, *a*, *um* (**populus**), public; **rēs pūblica**, the state, republic.

Pūblius, *i*, *m.*, a Roman name.

pudor, *ōris*, *m.*, sense of shame, honor.

puella, *ae* (**puer**), *f.*, girl.

puer, **puerī**, *m.*, boy.

pugna, *ae*, *f.*, fight, battle.

pugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (**pugnus**, fist),
intr., fight; **pugnātum est**, they
fought.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beauti-
ful, pretty.

Pulcher, Pulchrī, m., P. Claudius
Pulcher, consul 249 B.C.

pulchrē (**pulcher**), *adv.*, beautifully.

pullārius, ī (**pullus**), *m.*, keeper of the
sacred chickens.

pullus, ī, m., chicken.

pulsus. *See* **pellō**.

Punicus, a, um, Punic, Phoenician,
Carthaginian.

pūniō, īre, pūnivī, pūnītus (**poena**),
tr., punish.

Pyrēnaeus, a, um, (of the) Pyrenees.

Q

quadrāgintā, indecl., forty.

quadrīngentī, ae, a, four hundred.

quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, to
seek, ask.

quam, than; *with a sup.*, as possible,
possible.

quantus, a, um, how great, as.

quārē (**quae + rēs**), *adv.*, for which
reason, therefore.

quasī (**quam + sī**), *adv.*, on the
ground that, because.

quattuor, indecl., four.

-que, enclitic conj., and.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who,
which, what, that; **quam ob rem**,
wherefore, therefore.

quicquam. *See* **quisquam**.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcum-
que, rel. pron., whoever, whatever.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam or
quiddam, indef. pron., certain, a
certain one, somebody.

quidem, adv., indeed, truly.

quīn, conj., that not; that; from
'(after verbs of hindering)'.
quindecim (**quīnque + decem**),
indecl., fifteen.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnque, indecl., five.

Quīntus, ī (**quintus**, fifth), *m.*, a
Roman name.

Quirīnālis, is, m., Quirinal, one of
the hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, ī, n., the name given to
Romulus after his deification.

quis, quae, quid and quī, quae or
qua, quod, interrog. and indef.
pron., who, which, what; any, any
one, some one.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or
quodquam, indef. pron., any, any
one.

quīsque, quaeque, quidque or quod-
que, indef. pron., each (one), every
(one).

quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs or quidvīs
(**quī + vīs, from volō**), *indef.*
pron., any one you please.

quō (**quī**), *adv.*, where, whither.

quod (**quī**), *conj.*, because.

quondam, adv., once, formerly.

quoniam, conj., since, because.

quoque, adv., also, likewise.

R

rapīō, ere, rapuī, raptus, tr., seize, steal.
ratio, onis (**reor**, think), *f.*, considera-
tion, method.

ratis, is, f., raft.

Rauracī, ōrum, m., a Celtic tribe near
the Rhine.

recidō, ere, recidī, — (**cadō**), *intr.*,
fall back, fall, come back to.

- recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus (capiō),**
tr., take back ; *sē recipere*, betake one's self, retreat.
- reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus (dō),**
tr., give back, return, render.
- redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus (eō),**
intr., go back, return.
- redintegro, āre, āvī, ātus (integer, whole),** *tr.*, restore, renew.
- reditiō, ōnis (redeō),** *f.*, return.
- reducō, ere, reduxī, reductus (dūco),**
tr., lead back.
- referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (ferō),**
 carry back ; **pedem referre**, retreat.
- rēgīna, ae (rēx),** *f.*, queen.
- rēgius, a, um (rēx),** kingly, royal ;
aedēs rēgiae, palace.
- rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātus (rēgnum),** *intr.*,
 be king, reign.
- rēgnum, ī (rēx),** *n.*, royal power, kingdom.
- regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus,** *tr.*, guide, rule.
- relābor, relābī, relāpsus sum (lābor, slip),** *intr.*, sink back, subside.
- religiō, ōnis,** *f.*, piety ; *pl.*, rites.
- relinquō, ere, reliquī, relictus (linquō, leave),** *tr.*, leave behind, leave.
- reliquus, a, um,** remaining, left, the rest of ; **nihil reliquī**, nothing left ;
in reliquum tempus, for the future.
- remaneō, ēre, remānsī, — (maneō),**
intr., remain, stay.
- remūneror, āri, ātus sum (mūnus),**
tr., repay, reward.
- Remus, ī, m.,** the brother of Romulus.
- Rēmus, ī, m.,** a Reman, one of the Remi, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.
- renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntiō),** *tr.*, report.
- repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus (pellō),**
tr., drive back, repulse.
- repentē, adv.,** suddenly, unexpectedly.
- reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus (pariō, produce),** *tr.*, find, discover, ascertain.
- reppulī.** See **repellō.**
- reprehendō, ere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus (prehendō, seize),** *tr.*, blame, censure.
- reprōmittō, ere, reprōmīsī, reprōmissus (prōmittō),** *tr.*, promise in return.
- rēs, rei, f.,** thing, affair, circumstance ;
rēs frumentāria, provisions, supplies of grain ; **rēs pūblica**, state, republic ; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, therefore.
- rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus (scindō, break down),** *tr.*, break down, destroy.
- resistō, ere, restitī, — (sistō, place),**
intr., oppose, resist, hold one's ground.
- respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus (spondeō, promise),** *tr.*, reply, answer.
- restituō, ere, restituī, restitūtus (statuō),** *tr.*, renew, restore.
- retineō, ēre, retinui, retentus (teneō),**
tr., hold back, detain, retain.
- revertō, ere, revertī, —, and reverter, revertī, reversus sum (vertō),**
intr., turn back, return.
- reviviscō, ere, —, — (vivō),** *intr.*, be alive again.
- revocō, āre, āvī, ātus (vocō),** *tr.*, recall.
- rēx, rēgis, m.,** king.
- Rhēa, ae, f.,** Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
- Rhēnus, ī, m.,** the Rhine.
- Rhodanus, ī, m.,** the Rhone.

rigō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., wet, moisten.

rīpa, ae, f., bank (of a river).

rōbur, rōboris, n., oak; strength.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., ask, beg.

Rōma, ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, a, um (Rōma), Roman;

as subst. **Rōmānus, ī, m.**, a Roman.

Rōmulus, ī, m., the reputed founder of Rome.

rōsa, ae, f., rose.

rūmor, ōris, m., rumor, report.

rūrsus (revertō), *adv.*, back, again.

rūs, rūris, m., the country; **rūrī, in** the country.

S

Sabīnus, ī, m. 1. A Sabine. 2. *See* Titūrius.

Sabis, is, m., a river of Belgic Gaul, the modern Sambre.

sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy, sacred;
as subst. **sacrum, ī, n.**, a holy thing, religious rite.

sacerdōs, ōtis (sacer), *m. and f.*, priest, priestess.

sacrificium, ī (sacer + faciō), *n.*, sacrifice.

sacrum. *See* sacer.

saepe, adv., often; **saepius**, very often.

saepēs, is, f., hedge, fence.

sagitta, ae, f., arrow.

sagittārius, ī (sagitta), *m.*, bowman.

Saliī, ōrum (saliō, leap), *m.*, dancing priests of Mars.

saltem, adv., at least.

saltus, ūs (saliō, leap), *m.*, jump; ravine.

Santonēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe near the Garonne.

sarcina, ae, f., bundle, pack.

satis, adv., enough.

saxum, ī, n., rock, stone.

Scaevola, ae (scaeva, left-handed), *m.*, a surname of Gaius Mucius.

scapha, ae, f., skiff, boat.

scientia, ae (sciō), *f.*, knowledge, skill.

sciō, scīre, scīvī or scīi, scītus, tr., know, know how.

scrība, ae (scrībō), *m.*, writer, scribe, secretary.

scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, tr., write.

scūtum, ī, n., shield.

sē. *See* suī.

sēcrētus, a, um (sēcerno, separate), concealed, hidden, secret.

secundum (secundus), *adv.*, along.

secundus, a, um (sequor), following, second; favorable.

secūtus. *See* sequor.

sed, conj., but.

sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, intr., sit.

sēdecim, indecl., sixteen.

sedīle, is (sedeō), *n.*, seat.

sēgnis, e, slow, sluggish.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of Celtic Gaul.

sella, ae (sedeō), *f.*, seat, chair; **sella curūlis**, a portable chair, opening like a camp-stool. Its use belonged at first only to the king, but later to curule aediles, praetors, consuls, dictators, and the Flamines.

semper, adv., always, ever.

senātor, ōris (senex), *m.*, senator.

senātus, ūs (senex), *m.*, senate.

senectūs, ūtis (senex), *f.*, old age.

senex, gen. senis, old, aged; *comp.* senior; *sup.* maximus nātū.

Senonēs, um, m. pl., a tribe of Celtic Gaul.

- sententia, *ae* (*sentiō*, discern), *f.*, opinion, decision.
- sepeliō, *īre*, sepelivī, sepultus, *tr.*, bury.
- septem, *indecl.*, seven.
- septuāgintā, *indecl.*, seventy.
- sepultus. *See* sepelio.
- Sēquanus, *a, um*, Sequanian; *as subst.*
- Sēquanus, *ī, m.*, a Sequanian, one of the Sequani, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow.
- servō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*servus*), *tr.*, keep, preserve, save.
- servus, *ī, m.*, slave, servant.
- sēsē. *See* suī.
- sex, *indecl.*, six.
- sī, *conj.*, if; sī minus, if not.
- sibi. *See* suī.
- sīc, *adv.*, thus, so.
- siccus, *a, um*, dry; in sicco, on dry ground.
- sīgnificō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*sīgnum* + *faciō*), *tr.*, signify, declare.
- sīgnum, *ī, n.*, sign, signal, standard, ensign; sīgna convertere, face about; sīgna īferre, charge.
- silēns, silentis (*sileō*, be still), silent, quiet.
- silva, *ae, f.*, wood, forest.
- silvestris, *e* (*silva*), wooded.
- similis, *e*, like, similar.
- simulō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*similis*), *tr.*, pretend.
- sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
- singulī, *ae, a*, one by one, individual, each.
- sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left.
- socer, socerī, *m.*, father-in-law.
- societās, *ātis* (*socius*), *f.*, alliance.
- sociō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*socius*), *tr.*, join, share.
- socius, *ī* (*sequor*), *m.*, companion, ally.
- sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun; sōle ortō, at sunrise.
- soleō, *ēre*, solitus sum, *intr.*, be accustomed.
- sōlitūdō, *inis* (*sōlus*), *f.*, wilderness.
- solitus. *See* soleō.
- sollicitō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *tr.*, stir up, arouse, provoke.
- sōlus, *a, um*, only, alone, sole.
- somnium, *ī* (*somnus*), *n.*, dream.
- somnus, *ī, m.*, sleep.
- soror, *ōris, f.*, sister.
- spatium, *ī, n.*, space, distance, time, opportunity.
- spectāculum, *ī* (*spectō*, behold), *n.*, sight, show, spectacle.
- speculātor, *ōris, m.*, scout, spy.
- spērō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*spēs*), *tr.*, hope, expect.
- spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.
- sponte (*abl.*), of one's own accord.
- statim (*stō*), *adv.*, forthwith, immediately.
- statiō, *ōnis* (*stō*), *f.*, post, picket, guard.
- statua, *ae* (*statuō*), *f.*, image, statue.
- statuō, *ere*, statuī, statūtus, *tr.*, place, decide, determine.
- stella, *ae, f.*, star.
- stipendium, *ī* (*stīps*, gift + *pendō*, pay), *n.*, pay, tribute.
- strepitus, *ūs, m.*, noise.
- studeō, *ēre*, studuī, —, *intr.*, be eager for, desire.
- studium, *ī* (*studeō*), *n.*, zeal, eagerness.

stultus, a, um, silly, foolish.

sub, *prep. w. abl. and acc.*: *w. abl.*, under, below, at the foot of; *w. acc.*, under, up to, to the foot of.

subducō, ere, subdūxī, subductus (sub + ducō), *tr.*, bring up.

subitō (subitus, sudden), *adv.*, suddenly.

sublātus. See tollō.

subruō, ere, subruī, subrutus (sub + ruō, overthrow), *tr.*, dig under, undermine.

subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum (sub + sequor), *tr.*, follow, pursue.

subsidium, ī (sub + sedeō), *n.*, aid, relief.

succēdō, ere, successī, successum (sub + cēdō), *tr. and intr.*, come up, approach.

successus, ūs (succēdō), *m.*, approach.

Suessiōnēs, um, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

sufficiō, ere, sufficī, suffectus (sub + faciō), *intr.*, be sufficient.

suī, *pers. pron.*, of himself (herself, itself, themselves); he, she, it; *dat. sibi*, *acc. and abl. sē, sēsē*; *inter sē*, to one another.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, intr., be; *w. dat. of possessor*, have.

summa, ae (summus), *f.*, the whole; leadership, supremacy.

summus. See superus.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, tr., take, assume, begin (battle).

super, *prep. w. acc. and abl.*, over, upon, in addition to.

superbus, a, um, haughty, proud.

supericiō, ere, superiēcī, superiectus (super + iaciō), *tr.*, throw across.

superior. See superus.

superō, āre, āvī, ātus (superus), *tr.*, surpass, overcome, conquer.

supersedeō, ēre, supersēdī, supersesus (super + sedeō), *intr.*, be superior, refrain from.

supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus (super + sum), *intr.*, be over, survive.

superus, a, um (super), above; *comp. superior, ius*, upper, former; *sup. suprēmus, summus*, highest, very great, top of.

superveniō, īre, supervēnī, superventum (super + veniō), *intr.*, arrive.

supplicium, ī (supplex, suppliant), *n.*, punishment, death.

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc., above, before.

suprēmus. See superus.

suscipiō, ere, suscepī, susceptus (sub + capiō), *tr.*, undertake.

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātus (sustineō), *tr.*, endure, withstand.

sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, sustentus (sub + teneō), *tr. and intr.*, hold up, withstand, sustain.

sustulī. See tollō.

suus, a, um (suī), his, her, its, their; his (her, its, their) own; *suaque omnia*, all their possessions.

T

T. = Titus.

tam, adv., so.

tamen, adv., however, yet, nevertheless.

tantus, a, um (tām), so great, such.

Tarpēia, ae, f., a Roman girl in the time of Romulus.

Tatius, ī, m., Titus Tatius, a Sabine king, joint ruler with Romulus.

tē, acc. of tū.

tēlum, ī, n., missile, weapon.

temeritās, ātis, f., rashness.

tempestās, ātis (tempus), f., storm, tempest.

templum, ī, n., temple.

tempus, temporis, n., time, occasion.

tendō, ere, tetendī, tentus and tēnsus, spread out, stretch.

tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, young.

terra, ae, f., earth, land, country; **terrā,** by land.

terreō, ēre, terruī, territus, tr., frighten, terrify.

tertius, a, um (trēs), third.

testūdō, inis, f., tortoise; shed.

Teutonī, ōrum or Teutonēs, um, m. pl., Teutons, a Germanic people on the Baltic.

Tiberis, is, m., the Tiber.

tibi, dat. of tū.

tibicen, inis, m., piper, flute player.

timeō, ēre, timuī, —, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid of.

timidus, a, um (timeō), afraid, timid.

Titūrius, ī, m., Quīntus Titūrius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, ī, m., a Roman name.

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, tr., lift up, raise; remove, destroy.

Tolōsātēs, ium, m. pl., Tolosates, inhabitants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).

tormentum, ī (torqueo, twist), n., a military engine for hurling missiles.

Torquātus, ī (torquis, necklace), m., a surname of Titus Manlius. *See Mānlius.*

tōtus, a, um, whole, all.

trādō, ere, trādidi, trāditus (trāns + dō), tr., give over, give up, deliver, surrender.

trādūcō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus (trāns + dūcō), tr., lead over, transport.

trāciō, ere, trāiēcī, trāiectus (trāns + iaciō), tr., throw or carry across, pass over, transfix.

Trallēs, Trallium, f., a town of Lydia.

trāns, prep. w. acc., across, over, through.

trānseō, ire, trānsiī, trānsitus (trāns + eō), tr. and intr., cross, go over, pass over, go across.

trānsfugiō, ere, trānsfūgī, — (trāns + fugiō), intr., flee over, go over.

trānsgridior, trānsgridī, trānsgressus sum (trāns + gradior, go), tr., go over, pass over.

trānsiliō, ire, trānsiluī, — (trāns + salio, leap), tr., leap over, jump across.

trānsversus, a, um (trānsvertō, turn across), transverse; **trānsversa fossa,** cross ditch.

trecentī, ae, a (trēs + centum), three hundred.

tredecim (trēs + decem), indecl., thirteen.

trēs, tria, three.

tribūnal, ālis (tribūnus), n., judgment seat, tribunal.

tribūnus, ī (tribus, tribe), m., tribune, a military officer.

trīduum, ī (trēs + diēs), n., interval of three days.

trīgintā, indecl., thirty.

triumphus, ī, m., triumph.

tū, tuī, pers. pron., you, thou.

tuba, *ae, f.*, trumpet.

tulī. *See ferō.*

Tulingī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Germanic tribe near the upper Rhine.

tum, *adv.*, then, in the next place.

tumultus, *ī, m.*, uproar, disturbance.

tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.

turba, *ae, f.*, throng, crowd.

turpis, *e*, ugly, disgraceful, infamous.

turris, *is, f.*, tower.

tūtēla, *ae* (tueor, protect), *m.*, guardian, protection.

tūtus, *a, um* (tueor, protect), safe.

tuus, *a, um* (tu), your, yours.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when.

ūllus, *a, um*, any, any one.

ulterior, ulterius, farther; *sup.* ultimus, *a, um*.

ultrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, beyond, farther.

ūnā (ūnus), *adv.*, together with.

unde, *adv.*, whence.

undecim (ūnus + decem), *indecl.*, eleven.

undique, *adv.*, from or on all sides.

ūniversus, *a, um* (ūnus + vertō, turn), whole, entire.

ūnus, *a, um*, one.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.

ūsus, *a, um*. *See ūtor.*

ūsus, ūs (ūtor), *m.*, use, advantage, benefit, help; ūsuī esse, be of service.

ut, utī, (1) *adv.*, as when; (2) *conj.*, that, in order that, so that.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two), which one.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both.

utī. *See ut.*

ūtī. *See ūtor.*

ūtilis, *e* (ūtor), useful.

utinam, *adv.*, O that, would that, may.

ūtor, utī, ūsus sum, *tr.*, use, employ.

uxor, ōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacuus, *a, um*, empty, destitute of, vacant.

vadam, *ī, n.*, shoal, ford.

vāgītus, ūs (vāgiō, cry), *m.*, crying, squalling.

Valerius, *ī, m.*, Mārcus Valerius Maximus Corvīnus, consul 343 B.C.

validus, *a, um* (valeō, be strong), strong, sturdy.

vāllum, *ī, n.*, wall, rampart, earthworks.

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus (vāstus), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

vāstus, *a, um*, vast, enormous.

vēlōcitās, ātis (vēlōx), *f.*, speed, swiftness.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift, quick.

velut, velutī, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

venia, *ae, f.*, favor, permission.

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come; in fidem venīre, put one's self under the protection of.

vēnor, āri, ātus sum, *tr.*, hunt, chase.

verbum, *ī, n.*, word; verba facere, speak.

vereor, ērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, fear, be afraid of.

vergō, ere, —, —, *intr.*, lie toward, incline.

veritus. *See vereor.*

vērō (vērus, true), *adv.*, in fact, indeed, however.

- vertex, verticis** (**vertō**, turn), *m.*, summit, crest.
- vērum** (**vērus**, true), *adv.*, certainly, but.
- vēscor, vēsci**, —, *def.*, eat.
- Vesta, ae, f.**, goddess of the hearth, and hence of the family and state. Her sacred fire, kept continually burning in her temple near the Forum, was watched by six priestesses, called Vestals.
- vester, vestra, vestrum** (**vōs**), your, yours.
- vestis**, *is, f.*, garment, clothing.
- vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus**, *tr.*, forbid.
- vetus, veteris**, old, ancient; *comp.* **vetustior**; *sup.* **veterrimus**.
- vēxillum, ī, n.**, a military ensign.
- via, ae, f.**, way, road, street, journey.
- vīcī**. See **vincō**.
- vīcīnus, a, um** (**vīcus**), neighboring, near.
- victor, ōris** (**vincō**), *m.*, conqueror, victor.
- victōria, ae** (**victor**), *f.*, victory.
- victus, victurus**. See **vincō**.
- vīcus, ī, m.**, village.
- vidēlicet** (**videō** + **licet**), *adv.*, of course, that is.
- video, ēre, vīdī, vīsus**, *tr.*, see; *pass.*, seem, appear.
- vigilia, ae, f.**, watching, watch (a fourth part of the night).
- vīgintī, indecl.**, twenty.
- vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīctus**, *tr.*, bind.
- vincō, ere, vīcī, victus**, *tr.*, conquer, overcome.
- vinculum, ī** (**vinciō**), *n.*, chain, fetter; *in* or *ex* **vinculīs**, in chains.
- vindicō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *tr.*, punish, inflict punishment.
- vīnea, ae, f.**, a military shed.
- vīnum, ī, n.**, wine.
- vīnxī**. See **vinciō**.
- vir, virī, m.**, man.
- vīrēs**. See **vīs**.
- virgō, virginis, f.**, virgin, maiden, girl.
- Viromandūi, ōrum, m. pl.**, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- virtūs, virtūtis** (**vir**), *f.*, manhood, virtue, bravery, courage.
- vīs, vim, f.**, power, force, number; *pl.* **vīrēs**, strength.
- vīta, ae, f.**, life.
- vīvō, ere, vīxī**, —, *intr.*, live.
- vix, adv.**, hardly, barely.
- vīxī**. See **vincō**.
- vocō, āre, āvī, ātus** (**vōx**), *tr.*, call, summon.
- Vocontii, ōrum, m. pl.**, a tribe of Gaul.
1. **volō, velle, voluī**, —, wish, desire, be willing.
2. **volō, āre, āvī, ātūrus, intr.**, fly.
- voluntārius, a, um** (**voluntās**), willing, voluntary.
- voluntās, ātis** (1. **volō**), *f.*, desire, consent, favor.
- vōs, pl. of tū**.
- voeō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus, tr.**, vow, promise.
- vōx, vōcis, f.**, voice; *pl.*, words.
- vulgō** (**vulgus**, multitude), *adv.*, generally, everywhere.
- vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus** (**vulnus**), *tr.*, wound.
- vulnus, vulneris, n.**, wound.
- vultur, vulturis, m.**, vulture.
- vultus, ūs, m.**, expression, looks, countenance.

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH—LATIN

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

A

able, potēns, potētis; **be able**, possum, posse, potuī.
about to, be, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437); *ful. participle*.
above, superus.
absent, be, absum, āfuī, āfutūrus.
abundance, cōpia, ae, *f*.
accomplish, cōficiō, cōficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.
account of, on, *abl. of cause*; ob, propter, *w. acc.*
across, trāns, *w. acc.*; (**a bridge**)
 across the river, in flūmine.
adjoining, finitimus, a, um.
administer, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
advance, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessus; prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum.
advantage, ūsus, ūs, *m*.
advice, cōsiliū, ī, *n*.
advise, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.
affair, rēs, rei, *f*.
afraid, be, timeō, ēre, timuī, —.
after, *prep.*, post, *w. acc.*; *conj.*, postquam.
afterwards, *adv.*, postea.
against, in, contrā, *w. acc.*; **be**
 against, obsum, obesse, obfuī, obfutūrus.

agreeable, grātus, a, um.
aid, auxilium, ī, *n*.
aid, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus.
aim, petō, ere, petīvī or petīī, petītus.
alarm, permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.
all, omnis, e; tōtus, a, um.
alliance, amicitia, ae, *f*.
allow, patior, patī, passus sum; permittō, ere, permisi, permissus; concedō, ere, concessī, concessus.
ally, socius, ī, *m*.
alone, sōlus, a, um.
already, iam.
although, cum, *w. subjv.*; *abl. abs.*, 314.
always, semper.
am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
ambassador, lēgātus, ī, *m*.
among, inter, apud, *w. acc.*; **be**
 among, insum, inesse, infuī, infutūrus; intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus.
ample, amplus, a, um.
ancient, vetus, veteris.
and, et, -que, atque; **and not**, neque.
animal, animal, animālis, *n*.
announce, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
another, alius, a, ud; **to one another**, inter sē; **another's**, aliēnus, a, um.

answer, respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōnsus.

any, any one, ūllus, a, um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid *or* aliquod; quicumque, quicquam; quivīs, quaevis, quodvis.

appoint, cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus.

approach, adventus, ūs, *m.*; aditus, ūs, *m.*

approach, appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus; accēdō, ere, accēdī, accessus.

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, *m.*

arm, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.

arms, arma, ōrum, *n. plur.*

army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*; **army on the march**, agmen, agminis, *n.*

around, circum, *w. acc.*

arouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus; permōvō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.

arrange, instruō, ere, instrūxī, instructus.

arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*

arrive, perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perventus.

arrow, sagitta, ae, *f.*

art, ars, artis, *f.*

ascertain, reperiō, īre, repperī, repletus.

ask, rogō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petīvī *or* petiī, petitus; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus.

assemble, conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventus.

at, ad, *w. acc.*; *sign of abl. of time.*

Athens, Athēnae, ārum, *f. plur.*

attack, impetus, ūs, *m.*

attack, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; laceō, ere, laceōvī, laceōtus.

attempt, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.

authority, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*; postestās, ātis, *f.*

await, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

away, be, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfuturus.

B

bad, malus, a, um.

baggage, impedimenta, ōrum, *n. plur.*

band, manus, ūs, *f.*

bank (of river), rīpa, ae, *f.*

barbarous, barbarus, a, um.

battle, proelium, ī, *n.*; pugna, ae, *f.*;

line of battle, aciēs, aciēi, *f.*

be, sum, esse, fuī, futurus.

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.

beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.

beautifully, pulchrē.

because, quod; *abl. of cause*; **because of**, propter, *w. acc.*

before, prō, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*

beg, petō, ere, petīvī *or* petiī, petitus; rogō, āre, āvī, ātus.

begin, coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum;

begin battle, proelium committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.

behalf of, in, prō, *w. abl.*

behind, post, *w. acc.*

Belgae, Belgae, ārum, *m.*

believe, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus; crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditus.

below, inferus, a, um.

benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfuturus.

benefit, ūsus, ūs, *n.*

besiege, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; obsēdō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus.

best, optimus, a, um; *adv.*, optimē.

betake one's self, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus (*refl.*).

between, inter, *w. acc.*

bid, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus.
bind, vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus.
bird, avis, is, *f*.
black, niger, nigra, nigrum.
blame, culpō, āre, āvī, ātus.
body, corpus, corporis.
book, liber, librī, *m*.
booty, praeda, ae, *f*.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
bottom of, īmus, a, um.
boundary, finēs, ium, *f. plur.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m*.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, ūtis, *f*.
breaking out, eruptiō, ōnis, *f*.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m*.
brief, brevis, e.
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus ; portō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **bring in**, īferō, īferre, intulī, inlātus ; **bring together**, cōferō, cōferre, contulī, conlātus.
broad, lātus, a, um.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m*.
build, aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus ; faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
building, aedificium, ī, *n*.
burn, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.
but, sed, at, autem (*postpositive*).
by, *sign of abl.* ; ā or ab *w. abl.* ; **by means of**, *abl. of means* ; per, *w. acc.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m*.
call, vocō, āre, āvī, ātus ; appellō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **call together**, convocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
camp, castra, ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
care, cūra, ae, *f*.
carefully, cum cūrā.
carefulness, diligentia, ae, *f*.
carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātus ; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus ; **carry back**, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus ; **carry on**, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inis, *f*.
case, causa, ae, *f*.
cause, causa, ae, *f*.
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, *m.* ; equitēs, um, *m. plur.* ; **of the cavalry**, equester, equestris, equestre.
Celt, Celta, ae, *m*.
certain, a . . . one, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam.
chain, vinculum, ī ; **in chains**, ex vinculis.
chance, cāsus, ūs, *m*.
change, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus.
charge, signa īferō, īferre, intulī, inlātus.
charge of, be in, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus ; **put in charge of**, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus.
chief, princeps, principis, *m*.
children, liberī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
circumstance, rēs, rei, *f*.
citizen, civis, is, *m. and f*.
citizenship, civitās, ātis, *f*.
city, urbs, urbis, *f*.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f*.
collect, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
column, agmen, agminis, *n*.
come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum ; **come around**, circumveniō, īre, circum-

vēnī, circumventus; **come near**, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessurus; **come together**, conveniō, ire, convēnī, conventus; **come up**, pervēniō, ire, pervēnī, perventus.

command, imperium, ī, *n*.

command, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō, āre, āvī, ātus; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus; praesum, praeesse, prae-fui, praefuturus (*w. dat.*).

commander, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, ōris, *m*.

commit, committō, ere, commisi, commissus.

common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f*.

companion, socius, ī, *m*.

compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coactus.

complete, compleō, complēre, complēvi, complētus.

concerning, dē, *w. abl.*

condemn, damnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

confer, conloquor, conloquī, conlocutus sum.

confidence, fidēs, eī, *f*.

congratulate, grātulor, ārī, ātus sum.

conquer, superō, āre, āvī, ātus; vincō, ere, vicī, victus.

conspiracy, coniūratiō, ōnis, *f*.

conspirator, coniūrātus, ī, *m*.

consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m*.

contend, contendō, ere, contendī, contentus; dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātus.

contracted, angustus, a, um.

convert, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus.

Corinth, Corinthus, ī, *f*.

country, terra, ae, *f*.; patria, ae, *f*.; rūs, rūris; **in the country**, rūrī.

courage, animus, ī, *n*.

cross, trānsēō, ire, trānsiī, trānsitus.

crowd, vulgus, ī, *n*.; multitudō, inis, *f*.

cry, clāmor, ōris, *m*.

cup, pōculum, ī, *n*.

custom, cōnsuetudo, inis, *f*.

cut down, occidō, ere, occisi, occisus.

D

daily, cottidiānus, a, um; *adv.*, cottidiē.

danger, periculum, ī, *n*.

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

daughter, filia, ae, *f*.

day, diēs, diēi, *m*.

daybreak, at, primā lūce.

daylight, lūx, lūcis, *f*.

dear, cārus, a, um; grātus, a, um.

dearly, cārē.

death, mors, mortis, *f*.

deed, factum, ī, *n*.

deep, altus, a, um.

defeat, calamitās, ātis, *f*.

defend, dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus.

defense, praesidium, ī, *n*.

delay, moror, āri, ātus sum.

delight, dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

deliver (= set free), liberō, āre, āvī, ātus (= hand over); trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus.

Delphi, Delphī, ōrum, *m*.

demand, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petivī or petiī, petitus.

depart, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessus.

dependent, cliēns, clientis, *m*.

depth, altitudō, inis, *f*.

desire, cupiō, ere, cupivī or cupiī, cupītus.

desirous (of), cupidus, a, um.

determine, cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus.

die, morior, morī, mortuus sum; cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus.

difficult, difficilis, e.
diligence, diligentia, ae, *f*.
direct, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
disaster, calamitās, ātis, *f*.
discover, reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
disgraceful, turpis, e.
dismiss, dīmīttō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus.
dispatch, praemittō, ere, praemīsī, praemissus.
disposition, animus, ī, *m*.
dissimilar, dissimilis, e.
ditch, fossa, ae, *f*.
do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.
document, litterae, ārum, *f. plur.*
down from, dē, *w. abl.*
draw near, appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus.
draw up, īnstruō, ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus.
drive away, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
during, inter, *w. acc.*

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque; **each (of two)**, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; **eager for**, cupidus, a, um (*w. gen.*).
eagerly, ācritur; cum studiō.
earthworks, vāllum, ī, *n*.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, e.
eight, octō.
employ, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.
encourage, hortor, ārī, ātus sum; cohortor, ārī, ātus sum; incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
end, finis, īs, *f*.
enemy, hostis, is, *m. and f.*
enjoy, fruor, fruī, frūctus sum.

enough, satis, *indecl.*
ensign, sīgnum, ī, *n*.
entangle, impediō, īre, impedīvī, impeditus.
equal, pār, paris.
equestrian, equester, equestris, equestre.
equip, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.
establish, cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātus.
Europe, Eurōpa, ae, *f*.
even, *express by* ipse, a, um.
ever, semper.
every, omnis, e.
evil, malus, a, um.
exceedingly, *express by superlative.*
except, nisi.
exchange, inter sē dare.
exhort, cohortor, ārī, ātus sum.
expect, expectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
expel, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.

F

face about, sīgna cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus.
facing, adversus, a um; *prep.*, adversus, *w. acc.*
fail, dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus.
faithful, fidus, a, um.
fall, cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.
falling, cāsus, us, *m*.
famous, *express by* ille, illa, illud.
far, far off, longē.
farmer, agricola, ae, *m*.
father, pater, patris, *m*.
father-in-law, socer, ī, *m*.
favor, grātia, ae, *f*.
fear, timeō, ēre, timuī, —; vereor, ērī, veritus sum.
fertile, ferāx, ferācis.
few, paucī, ae, a (*plur.*).
field, ager, agrī, *m*.

fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre ; asper, aspera, asperum ; ferus, a, um.

fiercely, ācriter.

fight, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

fill up, compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.

finally, dēnique.

find, inveniō, īre, invēnī, inventus ; reperiō, irī, repperī, repertus.

finish, cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.

fire, ignis, is, *m.* ; **set fire to**, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.

first, prīmus, a, um ; **at first**, prīmō.

fit, idōneus, a, um.

five, quīnque.

flank, latus, lateris, *n.*

flee, fugiō, ere, fūgī, —.

flight, fuga, ae, *f.* ; **put to flight**, in fugam dare

follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.

following, posterus, a, um.

food, cibus, ī, *m.*

foot, pēs, pedis, *m.* ; **at the foot of**, sub, *w. abl.* ; **to the foot of**, sub, *w. acc.*

foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*

for, *sign of dat.* ; ob, *w. acc.* ; prō, *w. abl.*

forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus.

force, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.

forces, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*

forest, silva, ae, *f.*

form, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; instruō, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus.

former, ille, illa, illud.

fort, castellum, ī, *n.*

fortifications, moenia, ium, *n. plur.*

fortify, mūniō, īre, muni(v)ī, mūnītus.

fortune, fortūna, ae, *f.*

forty, quadrāgintā.

four, quattuor.

fourth, quārtus, a, um.

free, liber, libera, liberum.

free, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.

freedom, libertās, ātis, *f.*

frequently, saepe.

friend, amīcus, ī, *m.*

friendship, amicitia, ae, *f.*

frighten, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.

from, *sign of abl.* ; ā *or* ab, ē *or* ex, dē, *w. abl.*

future, for the, in reliquum tempus.

G

garden, hortus, ī, *m.*

garrison, praesidium, ī, *n.*

gate, porta, ae, *f.*

gather, cōferō, cōferre, contulī, conlātus.

Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, *f.* ; (inhabitant), Gallus, ī, *m.*

general, dux, ducis, *m.* ; imperātor, ōris, *m.*

gentle, lēnis, *e.*

gift, dōnum, ī, *n.*

girl, puella, ae, *f.*

give, dō, dare, dedī, datus ; **give back**, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum ; **give up**, dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus ; **permitted**, ere, permisi, permissus ; **tradō**, ere, tradidī, traditus.

glad, laetus, a, um.

go, eō, īre, iī, itum ; **proficiscor**, ī, profectus sum ; **go across or over**, trāseō, īre, trānsī, trānsitus ; **go back**, redeō, redire, rediī, reditum ; **go forward**, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum ; **go near**, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessus ; **go out**, exeō, exīre, exiī, exitus ; **let go**, dimittō, ere, dīmisi, dīmissus ; **be going to**, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437).

god, deus, *i, m.*

goddess, dea, *ae, f.*

good, bonus, *a, um.*

graceful, gracilis, *e.*

grain, frumentum, *i, n.*; **supplies of**

grain, rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, *f.*

great, magnus, *a, um*; **great many**, complūrēs, *ia, plur.*; **so great**, tantus, *a, um.*

greatness, magnitūdō, *inis, f.*

Greece, Graecia, *ae, f.*

Greek, Graecus, *i, m.*

ground, on the, humi.

guard, praesidium, *i, n.*

guest, hospes, hospitis, *m.*

H

habit, cōsuētūdō, *inis, f.*

hand, manus, *ūs, f.*

Hannibal, Hannibal, *is, m.*

happen, accidō, *ere, accidī, —.*

harass, laccessō, *ere, laccessivī, laccessitus.*

harbor, portus, *ūs, m.*

hard, difficilis, *e.*

hardly, vix.

harm, noceō, *ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus.*

hasten, mātūrō, *āre, āvī, ātus*; contendō, *ere, contendī, contentus.*

haughty, superbus, *a, um.*

have, habeo, *ēre, habuī, habitus*; *dat. of possessor*; **have to**, *passive periphrastic conjugation* (438-9).

he, is; hīc; ille; **he who**, is quī.

head, caput, capitis, *n.*; **be at the head of**, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus.

hear, audiō, *ire, audīvī, auditus.*

height, altitūdō, *inis, f.*

help, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *w. dat.*

help, auxilium, *i, n.*; ūsus, *ūs, m.*

Helvetians, Helvētiī, *orum, plur.*

her, hers, eius; suus, *a, um*; **her** (own), suus, *a, um.*

herself, *see self.*

high, altus, *a, um.*

hill, collis, *is, m.*; **up the hill**, adversō colle.

himself, *see self.*

hindrance, impedimentum, *i, n.*

his, eius; huius; illius; suus, *a, um.*

hither, hūc.

hold, teneō, *ēre, tenuī, tentus*; **hold back**, retineō, *ēre, retinuī, retentus*; **hold together**, contineō, *ēre, continuī, contentus*; **hold up**, sustineō, *ēre, sustinuī, sustentus.*

home, domus, *ūs or i, f.*; **at home**, domi.

honor, pudor, *ōris, m.*

hope, spērō, *āre, āvī, ātus.*

hope, spēs, *speī, f.*

horn, cornū, *ūs, n.*

horse, equus, *i, m.*

horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*

hostage, obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*

hour, hōra, *ae, f.*

house, domus, *ūs or i, f.*

however, autem; tamen.

hundred, centum.

hurl, iaciō, *ere, iēcī, iactus*; coniciō, *ere, conieci, coniectus.*

hurry, contendō, *ere, contendī, contentus*; mātūrō, *āre, āvī, ātus.*

I

I, ego, meī.

Ides, Idūs, Iduum, *f. plur.*

if, sī; **if not**, nisi.

impede, impediō, īre, impedīvī, impedītus.

in, *sign of abl.*; in, *w. abl.*; **be in**, in-sum, īnesse, īnfui, īnfutūrus.

incite, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

increase, augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus.

industry, diligentia, ae, *f.*

infamous, turpis, e.

infantry, peditēs, um, *m. plur.*

influence, grātia, ae, *f.*; auctōritās, ātis, *f.*; **have most influence**, plūrimum posse.

influence, permovere, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.

inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

inhabit, incolō, ere, incoluī, —.

inhabitant, incola, ae, *m.*

injure, noceō. ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus; obsum, obesse, obfui, obfutūrus.

intend, in animō habēre; in animō esse, *w. dat.*

into, in, *w. acc.*

intrust, committō, ere, commīsī, commissus; permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus.

island, īnsula, ae, *f.*

it, is, ea, id.

Italy, Italia, ae, *f.*

its, eius; suus, a, um.

J

January, Iānuārius, ī, *m.*

javelin, pilum, ī, *n.*

join, iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus; **join battle**, proelium committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.

joint, artus, ūs, *n.*

journey, iter, itineris, *n.*

judgment, iūdicium, ī, *n.*

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.

keep, servō, āre, āvī, ātus; **keep (away) from**, prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus.

kill, necō, āre, āvī, ātus; interficiō, ere, interfēcī, interfectus; occidō, ere, occidī, occisus.

kindness, grātia, ae, *f.*

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*

know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus; **intellegō**, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus; *perf. of cōgnōscō*, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, ī.

labor, labor, ōris, *m.*; opus, operis, *n.*

lack, inopia, ae, *f.*

lack, careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus.

lacking, be, dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, defutūrus, *w. dat.*

land, terra, ae, *f.*; **native land**, patria, ae, *f.*

large, magnus, a, um; **amplius**, a, um.

last, at, dēnique.

late at night, multā nocte; **till late at night**, ad multam noctem.

latter, hīc, haec, hoc.

law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*

lazy, piger, pīgra, pīgrum.

lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus; **lead across or over**, trādūcō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus; **lead back**, redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus; **lead out**, ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus.

leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; princeps, principis, *m.*

learn, intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus; discō, ere, didicī, —; **learn of**, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.

leave, *intrans.*, discēdō, ere, discessi, discessus; exeō, exīre, exiī, exitus; *trans.*, **leave, leave behind**, relīnquō, ere, reliquī, relictus.

left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.

left (= remaining), reliquus, a, um; **nothing left**, nihil reliquī.

legion, legiō, ōnis, *f.*

lest, nē, *w. subjv.*

let, *sign of imper. or subjv.*; **let go**, dimitto, ere, dimisi, dimissus.

letter (of alphabet), littera, ae, *f.*; (epistle), litterae, ārum, *f. plur.*

liberate, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.

liberty, libertās, ātis, *f.*

lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, *m.*

life, vīta, ae, *f.*

lift up, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.

light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*

like, similis, e.

like, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.

line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f.*

little, parvus, a, um.

live, vivō, ere, vixī, —.

long, longus, a, um; *adv.*, diū.

lord, dominus, ī, *m.*

love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.

low, humilis, e.

loyal, fīdus, a, um.

M

mad, īnsānus, a, um.

make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m.* and *f.*; **a man who**, is quī.

manage, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

manhood, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

many, *plural of* multus, a, um; **very many**, complūrēs, complūria.

march, iter, itineris, *n.*; **on the march**, ex itinere.

march, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum; iter faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; contendō, ere, contendī, contentus.

Marcus, Mārcus, ī, *m.*

master, magister, magistri, *m.*; dominus, ī, *m.*

may, *sign of wish*; utinam, *w. subjv.*

means of, by, *abl. of means*; per, *w. acc.*

mention, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

merchant, mercātor, ōris, *m.*

Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, *m.*

messenger, nūntius, ī, *m.*

middle of, medius, a, um.

mile, mille passūs; *plur.*, millia passuum.

mind, animus, ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*;

have in mind, in animō habēre; in

animō esse, *w. dat.*; **turn the mind**

to, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī,

animadversus.

mine, meus, a, um.

misfortune, cāsus, ūs, *m.*

money, pecūnia, ae, *f.*

month, mēnsis, is, *f.*

moon, lūna, ae, *f.*

more, plūs, plūris; *sign of com.*

moreover, autem (*postpositive*).

most, *sign of superlative*.

mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*

move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.

much, multus, a, um; *adv.*, multum, multō.

multitude, multitūdō, inis, *f.*

must, *passive periphrastic conjugation, w. dat. of agent* (438-9).

my, meus, a, um.

myself, *see self*.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*

name, appellō, āre, āvī, ātus.

narrow, angustus, a, um.
nation, nātiō, ōnis, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*
native land, patria, ae, *f.*
near, ad, *w. acc.*; **come near, go near**,
 accēdō, ere, accessi, accessūrus.
nearest, proximus, a, um.
need, be in need of, careō, ēre,
 carui, —.
neighbor, finitimus, ī, *m.*
neighboring, finitimus, a, um.
neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum.
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, a, um.
next, proximus, a, um; posterus,
 a, um.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **late at night**,
 multā nocte.
nineteen, undēviginti.
no, nōn; **no one, none**, nūllus, a, um;
 nēmō, *dat.* nēminī.
nor, neque.
north wind, aquilō, ōnis, *m.*
not, nōn; **and not, but not**, neque;
not to, nē, *w. subjv.*; **if not**, nisi;
that not, nē, *w. subjv.*
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
notice, animadvertō, ere, animadverti,
 animadversus.
now, nunc, iam.
number, numerus, ī, *m.*; multitūdō,
 inis, *f.*

O

O that, utinam, *w. subjv.*
obey, pāreō, ēre, parui, —.
obtain, obtineō, ēre, obtinui, ob-
 tentus.
occupy, occupō, āre, āvi, ātus.
of, *sign of gen.*; dē, *w. abl.*
often, saepe.

old, vetus, veteris; senex, senis.

on, in, w. *abl.*

one, ūnus, a, um; **one who**, is quī;
one . . . another, alius . . . alius; **the**
one . . . the other, alter . . . alter; **to**
one another, inter sē.

only, sōlus, a, um.

opportunity, spatium, ī, *n.*

oppose, resistō, ere, restiti, —.

order to, in, ut, *w. subjv.*

order, iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus; imperō,
 āre, āvi, ātus; mandō, āre, āvi,
 ātus.

Orgetorix, Orgetorix, īgis, *m.*

other, alius, alia, aliud; (**of two**),
 alter, a, um.

ought, dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus;
 oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impers.*;
passive periphrastic conjugation
 (438-9).

our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum;
our men, nostri, ōrum, *m. plur.*

ourselves, nōs, nostrum; ipsi, ae, a.

out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*

over, in, w. *abl.*; trāns, *w. acc.*; **be**
over, supersum, superesse, superfui,
 superfutūrus.

overcome, superō, āre, āvi, ātus.

overtake, cōsequor, cōsequi, cōn-
 secūtus sum.

owe, dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus.

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

pear tree, pirus, ī, *f.*

people, populus, ī, *m.*

perceive, intellegō, ere, intellēxi, in-
 tellēctus.

perish, cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus.

permit, *permittō*, ere, *permīsī*, *permissus*; *concedō*, ere, *concessī*, *concessus*.

persuade, *persuādeō*, ēre, *persuāsī*, *persuāsus*, *w. dat.*

pitch (camp), *pōnō*, ere, *posuī*, *positus*.

place, *locus*, *ī, m.*; *plur.*, *locī* or *loca*; **in that place**, *ibi*; **to this place**, *hūc*.

place, *pōnō*, ere, *posuī*, *positus*; *conlocō*, āre, āvi, ātus; *cōstituō*, ere, *cōstituī*, *cōstitutus*.

plan, *cōsiliū*, *ī, n.*

plead (a cause), *dīcō*, ere, *dīxī*, *dictus*.

please, *dēlectō*, āre, āvi, ātus.

pleasing, *grātus*, a, um.

pledge, *obses*, *obsidis*, *m. or f.*

plow, *arō*, āre, āvi, ātus.

point out, *dēmōnstrō*, āre, āvi, ātus.

Pompey, *Pompēius*, *ī, m.*

poor, *miser*, *miserā*, *miserum*.

possess, *obtinēō*, ēre, *obtinuī*, *obtentus*.

possession, take possession of, *occupō*, āre, āvi, ātus; **get possession of**, *potior*, *potirī*, *potitus sum*, *w. gen.*

possible, the . . . -est possible, as . . . as possible, *quam*, *w. superl. of adj.*; **as soon as possible**, *quam primum*.

power, *potestās*, ātis, *f.*; *imperium*, *ī, n.*; *vīs*, *acc.*, vim.

powerful, *potēns*, *potentis*; **be very powerful**, *plūrimum posse*.

praise, *laudō*, āre, āvi, ātus.

prefer, *mālō*, *mälle*, *māluī*, —.

prepare, *parō*, āre, āvi, ātus; **compare**, *parō*, āre, āvi, ātus.

present, be, *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfuī*, *adfutūrus*; *intersum*, *interesse*, *interfuī*, *interfutūrus*.

preserve, *servō*, āre, āvi, ātus.

pretty, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*.

proceed, *cōsequor*, *cōsequī*, *cōsecūtus sum*.

promise, *polliceor*, *ērī*, *pollicitus sum*.

proper, be, *oportet*, ēre, *oportuit*, *impers.*

protect, *dēfendō*, ēre, *dēfendī*, *dēfēnsus*.

protection, *praesidium*, *ī, n.*; *fidēs*, *eī, f.*; **put one's self under the protection of**, *in fidem venīre*, *w. dat.*

proud, *superbus*, a, um.

provide, *parō*, āre, āvi, ātus; **compare**, *parō*, āre, āvi, ātus.

province, *prōvincia*, ae, *f.*

provisions, *commeātus*, ūs, *m.*; *rēs frumentāria*, *reī frumentāriae*, *f.*

prudence, *cōsiliū*, *ī, n.*

public, *pūblicus*, a, um.

punish, *pūniō*, īre, *pūnīvī*, *pūnītus*; *animadvertō*, ere, *animadvertī*, *animadversus*.

punishment, *poena*, ae, *f.*

pupil, *discipulus*, *ī, m.*

purpose of, for the, *ad*, *w. acc. of gerundive*.

pursue, *cōsequor*, *cōsequī*, *cōsecūtus sum*.

put to flight, *in fugam dō*.

Q

queen, *rēgīna*, ae, *f.*

quickly, *celeriter*.

quickness, *celeritās*, ātis, *f.*

R

race (= nation), *gēns*, *gentis*, *f.*

raise, *tollō*, ere, *sustulī*, *sublātus*.

rampart, vāllum, ī, *n.*
rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
ravage, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.
reach, perveniō, ire, pervēnī, perventus.
rear, novissimum agmen, *n.*
reason, causa, ae, *f.*
receive, accipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptus ; recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus.
recognize, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.
redoubt, castellum, ī, *n.*
relief, subsidium, ī, *n.*
remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsus ; remaneō, ēre, remānsī, remānsurus.
remaining, reliquus, a, um.
remove, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.
render, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
reply, respondeō, ēre, respondi, responsus.
report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus ; ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus ; renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, *f.*
reputation, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*
request, petō, ere, petīvī or petiī, petītus.
require, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus.
resist, resistō, ere, restitī, —.
respect, vereor, ērī, veritus sum.
respects, in all, omnibus rēbus.
rest of, reliquus, a, um.
restrain, contineō, ere, continuī, contentus.
retain, obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus ; retineō, ēre, retinuī, retentus.
retreat, recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus (*refl.*) ; pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus.
return, *intr.*, redeō, redīre, rediī, redītum ; revertō, ere, revertī, —, and revertor, revertī, reversus sum ;

trans. (= **give back**), reddō, red-dere, reddidī, redditus.
reveal, ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
reward, praemium, ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, ī, *m.*
right, dexter, dext[e]ra, dext[e]rum.
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
road, via, ae, *f.* ; iter, itineris, *n.*
rock, saxum, ī, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um ; *as subst.*, Rōmānus, ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, ae, *f.*
rose, rōsa, ae, *f.*
rough, asper, aspera, asperum.
rouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
rule, rēgō, ere, rēxī, rēctus ; imperō, āre, āvī, ātus.
run away, fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitus.

S

safe, tūtus, a, um.
sailor, nauta, ae, *m.*
sake of, for the, causā, *w. gen.* ; ut, *w. subjv.*
sally, ēruptiō, ōnis, *f.*
same, idem, eadem, idem.
save (= **preserve**), servō, āre, āvī, ātus ; (= **rescue**), ēripiō, ere, ēri-puī, ēreptus.
say, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus.
scare, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
scout, explōrātor, ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, is, *n.*
seat, sedile, is, *n.*
second, secundus, a, um ; **for the second time**, iterum.
see, vīdeō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, ere, petīvī or petiī, petītus ; quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus.

seize, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus ; capiō,
ere, cēpī, captus.

select, dēligō, ere, dēlēxī, dēlēctus.

self, himself, herself, itself, them-
selves, ipse, a, um (*intens.*) ; suī
(*refl.*) ; **myself, yourself, our-**
selves, ipse (*intens.*) ; *pers. pron.*
(*refl.*).

senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*

send, mittō, ere, misī, missus ; **send**
ahead, praemittō, ere, praemisi,
praemissus ; **send off**, dīmittō, ere,
dīmisi, dīmissus.

Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, *m. plur.*

servant, servus, ī, *m.*

set fire to, incendō, ere, incendi, in-
cēnsus.

set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profec-
tus sum.

set over, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, prae-
fectus.

seven, septem.

seventy, septuāgintā.

severely, graviter.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.

she, ea ; illa.

ship, nāvis, is, *f.*

short, brevis, e.

shout, clāmor, ōris, *m.*

show, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.

side, latus, lateris, *n.* ; **from or on all**
sides, undique.

sight, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

sign, signum, ī, *n.*

similar, similis, e.

six, sex.

size, magnitūdō, inis, *f.*

skillful, peritus, a, um.

slaughter, caedēs, is, *f.*

slave, servus, ī, *m.*

slay, occidō, ere, occidī, occisus.

slender, gracilis, e.

slow, piger, pigra, pigrum.

small, parvus, a, um.

smooth, lēnis, e.

snatch away, ēripiō, ere, ēripui,
ēreptus.

so, ita ; **tam** ; **so great**, tantus, a, um ;
and so, itaque ; **so as not**, nē,
rv. subjv.

soldier, miles, militis, *m.*

sole, sōlus, a, um.

some (one), quis, quae (qua), quid
(quod) ; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid
(aliquod) ; **some . . . others**, alii
. . . alii ; **some in one direction**,
some in another, alii aliam in
partem.

son, filius, filiī *or* filii, *m.*

son-in-law, gener, generi, *m.*

soon, iam ; **mox** ; **as soon as**, quam
primum.

space, spatium, ī, *n.*

speak, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus ; **speak**
together, conloquor, conloquī, con-
locūtus sum.

spear, hasta, ae, *f.*

speech, ōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*

speed, celeritās, ātis, *f.*

spirit, animus, ī, *m.*

spoil, praeda, ae, *f.*

stand before, praestō, praestāre, prae-
stitī, —.

star, stella, ae, *f.*

state, civitās, ātis, *f.* ; rēs pūblica, rei
pūblīcae, *f.*

station, conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus ; con-
stituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus.

stay, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum.

storm, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **take**
by storm, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

story, fābula, ae, *f.*
strange, aliēnus, a, um.
street, via, ae, *f.*
strength, vīs, vim, *f.*
strengthen, alō, ere, aluī, alitus *or* altus.
strive, contendō, ere, contendī, contentus.
strong, validus, a, um.
struggle, contendō, ere, contendī, contentus.
sturdy, validus, a, um.
such, tālis, e; tantus, a, um.
suffer, patior, patī, passus sum; labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
summer, aestās, ātis, *f.*
summon, convocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
supplies, commeātus, ūs, *m.*; **supplies of grain**, rēs frūmentāria, *f.*
supply, cōpia, ae, *f.*
suppose, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus; arbitror, arī, ātus sum.
surpass, *tr.*, superō, āre, āvī, ātus; *intr.*, praestō, praestāre, praestitī, —.
surrender, dēditō, ōnis, *f.*
surrender, trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus; dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus.
surround, circumveniō, īre, circumvenī, circumventus.
survive, supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus.
sustain, sustineō, ēre, sustinūī, sustentus.
swift, vėlōx, vėlōcis.
swiftly, celeriter.
sword, gladius, ī, *m.*

T

table, mēnsa, ae, *f.*
take, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus; **take**

away, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus;
take by storm, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; **take possession of**, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.
teacher, magister, magistrī, *m.*
tell, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus.
temple, templum, ī, *n.*; aedēs, aedium, *f. plur.*
ten, decem.
tender, tener, tenera, tenerum.
territory, finēs, finium, *m. plur.*
than, quam; *abl. after comparative.*
that, *demonstr.*, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; *rel.*, quī, quae, quod.
that, in order that, so that, ut, *w. subjv.*; *after verbs of fearing*, nē, *w. subjv.*; **that not**, nē, *w. subjv.*; **would that**, utinam.
their (own), theirs, suus, a, um; eōrum, eārum.
themselves, *see self.*
thence, inde.
there, ibi; *introductory, not translated.*
therefore, itaque.
thereupon, inde.
they, ii, eae, ea; illī, illae, illa.
thing, rēs, rei, *f.*
think, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus; arbitror, arī, ātus sum.
third, tertius, a, um.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hoc.
thou, tū.
thousand, mīlle (*indecl.*); *plur.*, millia *or* mīlia.
three, trēs, tria; **three hundred**, trecentī, ae, a.
through, per, *w. acc.*
throw, iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus; coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus.

thus, ita.

Tiber, Tiberis, is, *m.*

time, tempus, temporis, *n.*; spatium, ī, *n.*; for a long time, diū.

to, *sign of dat.*; ad, in, *w. acc.*; *sign of subjv. of purpose.*

to-day, hodiē.

top of, summus, a, um.

toward (s), ad, *w. acc.*

tower, turris, is, *f.*

town, oppidum, ī, *n.*

trader, mercātor, ōris, *m.*

Tralles, Trallēs, Trallium, *m. pl.*

transport, trāducō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus.

treat, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.

trench, fossa, ae, *f.*

trial, iūdicium, ī, *n.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*

troops, cōpiae, ārum, *f. pl.*

trust, fidēs, ei, *f.*

trust, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditus.

try, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.

turn about, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus; turn back, revertō, ere, revertī, —, and revertor, revertī, reversus sum; turn the mind to, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vigintī.

two, duo, duae, duo.

U

ugly, turpis, e.

unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.

unless, nisi.

unlike, dissimilis, e.

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.

upon, in, *w. acc. and abl.*

urge, cohortor, āri, ātus sum; urge on, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

use, ūsus, ūs, *m.*; be of use to, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfūturus.

use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

V

van, primum agmen, primī agminis, *n.*

vassal, cliēns, clientis, *m.*

very, *adj. or adv. in superl.*; *intens.*, ipse, a, um.

view, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

village, vīcus, ī, *m.*

virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus; wage war upon, bellum inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus.

wait for, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

wall, mūrus, ī, *m.*

walls, moenia, moenium, *n.*

war, bellum, ī, *n.*

warn, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.

waste, lay, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.

watch, vigilia, ae, *f.*

way, via, ae, *f.*

we, nōs, nostrum.

weapon, tēlum, ī, *n.*; *plur.*, arma, ōrum, *n.*

wear out, cōficiō, ere, cōfēcī, cōnfectus.

well, bene; well known, nōbilis, e.

what (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

when, ubi.

where, ubi.

which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid;

which of two, uter, utra, utrum.

white, albus, a, um.

who (*rel.*), qui, quae; (*interrog.*), quis, quae.

whole, tōtus, a, um; omnis, e.

why, cūr.

wicked, malus, a, um.

wide, lātus, a, um.

wild, ferus, a, um.

will, vōlō, velle, voluī, —; **will not**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.

willing, be, vōlō, velle, voluī, —; **be more willing**, mālō, malle, mālūī, —.

wine, vīnum, ī, *n.*

wing, cornū, ūs, *n.*

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*

winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*

wisely, prūdentē.

wish, cupiō, ere, cupīvī, cupītus; vōlō, velle, voluī, —.

with, *sign of abl.*; cum, *w. abl.*; apud, *w. acc.*

withdraw, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum.

within, *sign of abl. of time.*

without, sine, *w. abl.*; **be without**, careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus.

withstand, sustineō, ēre, sustinūī, sustentus.

woman, fēmina, ae, *f.*; mulier, mulieris, *f.*

wood, (= forest), silva, ae, *f.*

work, labor, ōris, *f.*; opus, operis, *n.*

work, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

would that, utinam, *w. subjv.*

wound, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*

wound, vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus.

wretched, miser, misera, miserum.

write, scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus.

Y

year, annus, ī, *m.*

yet, tamen.

you, tū, vōs.

young, iuvenis, is.

your, yours, tuus, a, um; vester, vestra, vestrum.

yourself, tū, vōs; ipse.

Z

zeal, studium, ī, *n.*

INDEX

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

- Ablative, of agent, 142; of cause, 118; of comparison, 260; of manner, 148; of means, 94; of measure of difference, 267; of separation, 211; of specification, 157; of time when, 131; descriptive, 302-303; ablative absolute, 315-317; with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, 337.
- Accent, 20.
- Accusative, of time and space, 245; of limit of motion, 231; subject accusative, 184; 329.
- Active periphrastic conjugation, 437; 504.
- Adjectives, agreement, 65; demonstrative, 201; interrogative, 216, 217; possessive, 292; as nouns, 203; with dative, 163.
- Adverbs, formation, 279; comparison, 280.
- Agent, expressed by ablative with *ab*, 142.
- Apposition, 58.
- bonus*, comparison, 272.
- Cause, ablative of, 118.
- Commands, 399.
- Comparison, lessons, 43, 44; ablative of, 260; irregular, 272; of adverbs, 280.
- Compound verbs, construction, 393-394.
- Concessive clauses, 386-387.
- Conditional sentences, 413-421.
- Cum clauses, 386-387.
- Dative, of possession, 238; of service, 294-295; with adjective, 163; with verbs, 342-343; with compound verbs, 393-394.
- Demonstratives, 201.
- Deponent verbs, 333-335, 503; perfect passive participle of, active in meaning, 335.
- Descriptive ablative and genitive, 302-303.
- domi*, 229.
- domus*, 222, 2; 476.
- eō*, 228; 500.
- Exceedingly, expressed by superlative, 268.
- Fearing, verbs of, 384, 385.
- ferō*, 502.
- fīō*, 501.
- fruor*, 337.
- fungor*, 337.
- Gender, rules of, 27.
- Genitive, descriptive, 302-303; partitive, 251.
- Gerund and Gerundive, 403-406.
- hic*, 201.
- humī*, 229.
- idem*, 189.
- ille*, 202.
- Impersonal use of verbs, 432.
- Indefinite pronouns, 300-301.
- Indirect discourse, 327-330; 369-370; 427-430.
- Indirect object, 58.
- Indirect question, 369-370.
- Infinitive, formation, 322; as subject, 183 *b*; complementary, 184; tense of, in indirect discourse, 330.
- Interrogative adjective and pronoun, 216.
- ipse*, 207.
- is*, 188.
- iste*, 208.
- Locative, 229.

mālo, 499.

Measure of difference, ablative of, 267.

-ne, 40.

nōiō, 499.

Order of Words, 82.

Participles, formation, 307; tenses, 309; use, 311; of deponents, 334; perfect passive participle, active in meaning, 335; as protasis, 311, 315, 316, 421.

Partitive genitive, 251.

Passive periphrastic conjugation, 438-439; 505.

Personal pronouns, 284, 285.

Place where, whither, whence, 231.

plus, 273.

Possession, dative of, 238.

Possessive adjectives, 292-293.

possum, 497.

potior, 337.

Pronouns, demonstrative, 201; indefinite, 300-301; interrogative, 216; personal, 284; reflexive, 286; relative, 195; agreement, 197; in indirect discourse, 428.

prōsum, 498.

Purpose, expressed by subjunctive, 350-351; 363-364; by gerund or gerundive, 406; by supine, 433-435.

Quantity, 16.

Questions, 40; indirect, 369-370.

quī, 195.

quis, 216; 301.

quisquam, 301.

quisque, 301.

Rather, expressed by comparative, 268.

Reflexive pronouns, 284, 286.

Relative, 195; relative clause of purpose, 363-364.

Result, expressed by subjunctive, 356-358.

rurī, 229.

Separation, ablative of, 211.

Sequence of tenses, 368.

Space, extent of, expressed by accusative, 245.

Subjunctive, of purpose, 350-351; 363-364; of result, 356-358.

Substantive clauses, 378; with verbs of fearing, 384-385.

sum, 496.

Supine, 433-435.

Time, extent of, expressed by accusative, 245; clauses expressing time, 386-387.

Too, expressed by comparative, 268.

ūtor, 337.

Very, expressed by superlative, 268.

vēscor, 337.

volo, 499.

Wishes, 423-425.

LANE'S LATIN GRAMMAR

REVISED EDITION

\$1.50

By GEORGE M. LANE, PH.D., LL.D.

Professor Emeritus of Latin, Harvard University

SINCE its first publication this work has been used more widely than any other Latin grammar for advanced study and reference. It is approached by no other American publication in completeness and authoritativeness, and is conspicuous for its originality, sound scholarship, accurate analysis of constructions, copious illustrations, and clear arrangement. The revision has been conducted under the direction of Professor Morris H. Morgan, who edited and completed the original edition, left unfinished by the death of the distinguished author. The chapter on Sound has been rewritten and enlarged by Professor Hanns Oertel, of Yale, and the views concerning the nature and kinds of vowels and consonants, the Latin accent, and the phonetic laws under which changes of vowel and consonant should take place, have been modified to conform to present usage. Many changes have also been made in the chapter on Inflection and Formation. Throughout the book the working of "hidden quantities" has been completely revised. For the most part, however, no alterations have been found necessary in the treatment of broad general principles or in the method of presentation.

LANE AND MORGAN'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR

\$1.00

Prepared by MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D., LL.D.

Professor of Classical Philology in Harvard University

THIS book is intended for the use of students of Latin during their course in secondary schools. It is based on Lane's Latin Grammar and furnishes abundant material for careful training in Latin pronunciation, for the study of the leading principles under which Latin words are formed, for thorough drill in inflections, and for acquiring a good working knowledge of the most important principles of Latin syntax and composition. The arrangement of the material is clear and logical, with cross-references to the larger grammar.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI

CHICAGO

PEARSON'S

Latin Prose Composition

BY HENRY CARR PEARSON, A. B. (HARVARD)

Horace Mann School, Teachers College, New York.

PRICE, \$1.00

THIS book combines a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Latin Syntax with abundant practice in translating English into Latin; and affords constant practice in writing Latin at sight. The Review Lessons, introduced at intervals, constitute a very important feature. The volume is complete in itself, and meets the most exacting college entrance requirements.

Part I is a summary of the fundamental principles of Latin grammar and syntax, and contains clear, concise explanations of many points that are troublesome to the ordinary pupil and which are not readily understood by references to the Latin grammars. It is divided into graded lessons of convenient length, each lesson including English-Latin exercises for practice. References to all the leading grammars are also given.

Part II contains short, disconnected English sentences and some continuous narrative based on Books I-IV of Caesar's Gallic War.

Part III presents material for translation into Latin, based upon eight orations of Cicero; disconnected English sentences based upon Cicero's Catiline, I; and a connected English narrative based upon Cicero's Catiline II-IV, Pompey's Military Command, Archias, Marcellus, and Ligarius. There are also carefully graded exercises for general review, preparatory to college entrance examinations.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Pearson's Greek Prose Composition

By HENRY CARR PEARSON, A.B. (Harvard)

Flexible Binding, 12mo, 187 pages Price, 90 cents

The purpose of this book is to combine a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Greek syntax with abundant practice in translating connected Idiomatic English into Greek, and to afford constant practice in writing Greek at sight.

Part I contains, in graded lessons, the principal points of Greek syntax which require especial emphasis in Second Year Greek. These lessons are designed to serve as a partial review of the first year's work and as an introduction to the composition work in connection with the reading of Xenophon's Anabasis.

Part II contains short, simple English sentences, based on Books I-IV of the Anabasis, designed to be used in connection with the reading of the text.

Part III contains connected English prose, based on Books I-IV of the Anabasis.

Review Lessons are introduced at intervals, containing a list of the important words and an enumeration of the principal constructions used in the preceding sentences.

The book is provided with an English-Greek Vocabulary and contains a selection of recent college entrance examination papers in Greek prose composition, for the purpose of supplying further material for practice and of familiarizing the student with the nature of the examinations set by the various colleges.

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

New York

•

Cincinnati

•

Chicago



**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

